Rosaceae—Rose family

Chamaebatia foliolosa Benth.

bearmat

Arthur W. Magill and Susan E. Meyer

Dr. Magill retired from USDA Forest Service's Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station;
Dr. Meyer is a research ecologist with the USDA Forest Service's Rocky Mountain Research Station,
Shrub Sciences Laboratory, Provo, Utah

Other common names. southern bearmat, mountain-misery, Sierra mountain-misery, San Diego mountain-misery, bearclover, tarweed, and running-oak.

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. Two varieties of this species—*Chamaebatia foliolosa* Benth.—are recognized. The typical variety, bearmat, is an evergreen shrub, 15 to 60 cm tall, that grows between 600 and 2,100 m elevation on the western slopes of the Sierra Nevada in California. It occurs in open ponderosa pine (*Pinus ponderosa* Dougl. ex Laws.) and in California red fir *(Abies magnifica* A. Murr.) forests (Munz and Keck 1963). Southern bearmat—*C. foliolosa* var. *australis* Brandg.—grows to a height of nearly 2 m on dry slopes in the chaparral type from San Diego County to Baja California.

The typical variety is normally regarded as a pest because it inhibits the establishment and growth of trees (Adams 1969; Dayton 1931). From an aesthetic viewpoint, the plants can provide attractive ground cover, but their glutinous leaves are highly aromatic (Bailey 1928; McMinn 1959). It is useful for watershed stabilization and is a potential landscape plant (Magill 1974).

Flowering, seed production, and seed use. Bearmat produces perfect flowers throughout its range from May through July; southern bearmat flowers from November through May (McMinn 1959). The fruits are brown achenes about 5 mm in length (figures 1 and 2). Seeds require from 1 to 3 months of moist stratification at temperatures ranging from 1 to 5 °C before they will germinate (Emery 1964; Magill 1974). In the nursery, seeds should be sown in spring (Bailey 1928).

Figure 1—*Chamaebatia foliolosa*, bearmat: achene (**left**) and extracted seed (**right**).

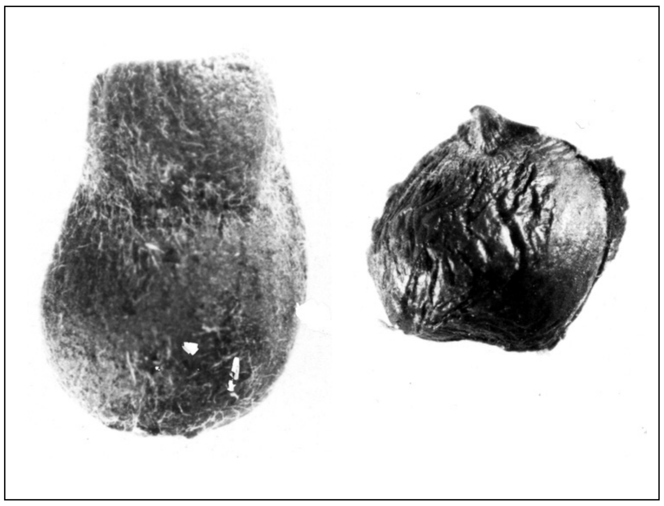
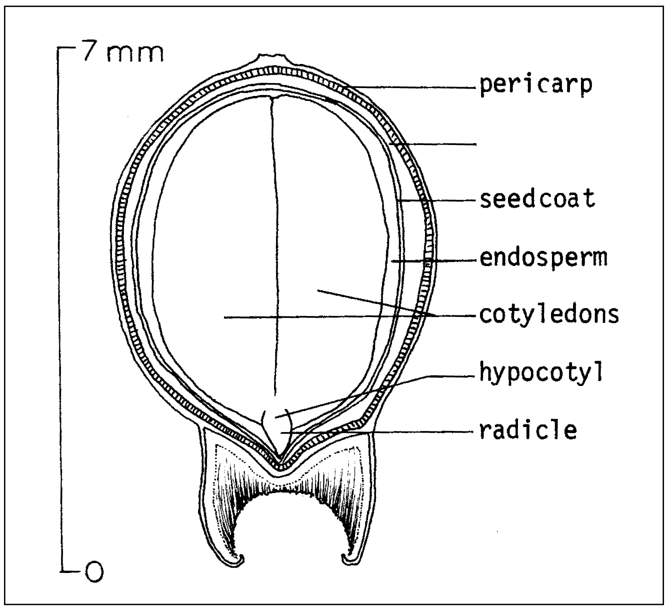


Figure 2—*Chamaebatia foliolosa*, bearmat: longitudinal section through an achene.



References

Adams RS. 1969. How to cure mountain misery. Sacramento: California Division of Forestry. 23 p.
Bailey LH. 1928. The standard cyclopedia for horticulture. New York: Macmillan. 3639 p.
Dayton WA. 1931. Important western browse plants. Misc. Pub. 101. Washington, DC: USDA. 214 p.
Emery D. 1964. Seed propagation of native California plants. Santa Barbara Botanical Garden Leaflet 1(10): 81–96.
McMinn HE. 1959. An illustrated manual of California shrubs. Berkeley: University of California Press. 663 p.
Magill AW. 1974. *Chamaebatia foliolosa* Benth., bearmat. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 315.
Munz PA, Keck DD. 1963. A California flora. Berkeley: University of California Press. 1681 p.

Rosaceae—Rose family

Chamaebatiaria millefolium (Torr.) Maxim.

fernbush

Nancy L. Shaw and Emerenciana G. Hurd

Dr. Shaw is a research botanist at the USDA Forest Service's Rocky Mountain Research Station, Boise, Idaho; Dr. Hurd retired from the USDA Forest Service's Rocky Mountain Research Station

Other common names. desert sweet, fern-bush, desert-sweet.

Synonyms. *Spiraea millefolium* Torr., *Sorbaria millefolium* Focke, *Basilima millefolium* Greene, *Chamaebatiaria glutinosa* Rydb., and *Spiraea glutinosa* Fedde (Davis 1952; Hitchcock and others 1961; Peck 1961; Young and Young 1986).

Growth habit, occurence and use. Fernbush—*Chamaebatiaria millefolium* (Torr.) Maxim.—the only species in its genus, is endemic to the Great Basin, Colorado Plateau, and adjacent areas of the western United States. It is an upright, generally multistemmed, sweetly aromatic shrub 0.3 to 2 m tall. Bark of young branches is brown and becomes smooth and gray with age. Leaves are leathery, alternate, simple, bipinnatisect, stipulate, and more or less clustered near the ends of the branches. Foliage and young branches are viscid and pubescent, with simple and stellate hairs that are sharp-pointed or glandular-capitate. Southern populations are more or less evergreen (Phillips 1949), whereas northern populations are largely deciduous, retaining a few leaves near the branch tips through winter and initiating leaf development in early spring (Hitchcock and others 1961; Kirkwood 1930).

Fernbush is distributed east of the Cascade and Sierra Nevada Mountains from Deschutes Co., Oregon, to southern California and eastward across southern Oregon and Idaho, Nevada, Utah, northern Arizona, and New Mexico (Hitchcock and others 1961; Phillips 1949; Welsh and others 1987; Young and Young 1992). Fernbush is often present as an early successional species on cinder cones and basalt lava flows but is also found on soils derived from limestone and granite (Eggler 1941; Everett 1957; Merkle 1952). It occurs in cracks and fissures of rock outcrops and on well-drained soils of dry, rocky, gravelly canyons and mountain slopes at elevations ranging from 900 to 3,400 m (Albee and others 1988; Hickman 1993). Fernbush grows in isolated populations or as an associated species in sagebrush scrub (*Artemisia* spp.), sagebrush, northern juniper, mountain brush, aspen, limber pine, ponderosa pine, spruce–fir, and western bristlecone pine communities (Hickman 1993; Munz and Keck 1959; Welsh and others 1987).

Fernbush is occasionally browsed by mule deer (*Odocoileus hemionus*), sheep, and goats, but only rarely by cattle (Mozingo 1987; van Dersal 1938). Native Americans used a tea made from its leaves for treatment of stomach aches (Mozingo 1987).

Unlike its namesake genus—*Chamaebatia* Benth., bearmat or mountain misery—fernbush is not nodulated by nitrogen-fixing actinomycetes (McArthur and Sanderson 1985). Plants are cyanogenic (Fikenscher and others 1981). The species is a very rare host of juniper mistletoe—*Phoradendron juniperinum* Engelm. (Hawksworth and Mathiasen 1978).

First cultivated in 1878 (Rehder 1940), fernbush has long been recognized as an attractive ornamental because of its profuse and conspicuous inflorescences of white- to cream-colored flowers, long flowering season, and aromatic, fernlike foliage (Bailey 1902; Hitchcock and others 1961; Phillips 1949; Young and Young 1986). It is used effectively in mass plantings, xeriscapes, screens, and hedges when planted in full sun. Specimen plants provide color and texture accents (Phillips 1949).

Genetic variation, hybridization, and origin. McArthur (1984) and McArthur and others (1983) described *Chamaebatiaria* and other monotypic western North American genera of the Rosaceae as showing little variation compared to larger genera such as *Rosa* (rose) or *Cercocarpus* (mountain-mahogany). Typical of shrubby western North American members of subfamily Spiraeoideae, fernbush has x = n = 9 chromosomes (McArthur and Sanderson 1985). Hybridization of fernbush with other species has not been reported.

Chamaebatiaria (subfamily Spiraeoideae) was named for its morphologic resemblance to *Chamaebatia* (subfamily

C

Rosoideae). McArthur and Sanderson (1985) suggest that shrubby Spiraeoideae and Rosoideae of western North America may be rather closely related based on similarities in morphologic and other characteristics of the 2 groups. Wolfe and Schorn (1989) and Wolfe and Wehr (1988) discuss evidence from Paleogene montane floras of the Rocky Mountains indicating the possible divergence of *Chamaebatiaria* and *Chamaebatia* from a common Eocene ancestor. They suggest both lines adapted to progressively drier post-Eocene conditions than the mesic coniferous forest environment inhabited by the ancestor.

Flowering and fruiting. The showy, white, insect-pollinated flowers develop in profuse, terminal, leafy-bracteate panicles up to 20 cm in length. Flowers are complete, regular, and about 0.8 to 1.5 cm in diameter. The calyx consists of 5 persistent green sepals. A glandular disk lining the hypanthium bears 5 petals and numerous stamens. Pistils are 5 (rarely 4), ovaries superior, and styles free. The ovaries are more or less connate below in flower, but separate in fruit. The pubescent, coriaceous, few-seeded follicles dehisce along the ventral suture and upper half of the dorsal suture (figure 1). Seeds are erect, yellowish to brownish, linear to narrowly fusiform, and somewhat flattened at each end (figure 2). The outer layer of the soft thin seedcoat is ridged, giving the body of the seed a 3-angled appearance; the inner layer is thin and translucent. A fleshy endosperm layer adheres to the seedcoat. The embryo is linear-oblong with 2 flat cotyledons and occupies the central portion of the seed (figure 3). Germination is epigeal (Hickman 1993; Hitchcock and others 1961; Hurd 1995; Kirkwood 1930; Welch and others 1987).

Figure 1—*Chamaebatiaria millefolium,* fernbush: follicle.

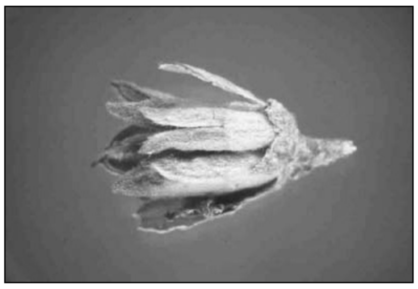


Figure 2—*Chamaebatiaria millefolium*, fernbush: seeds.

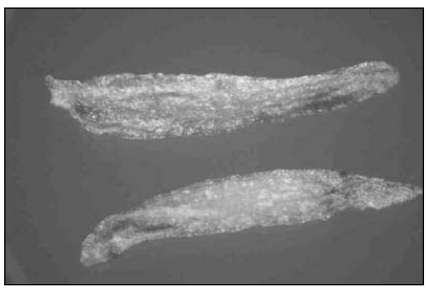
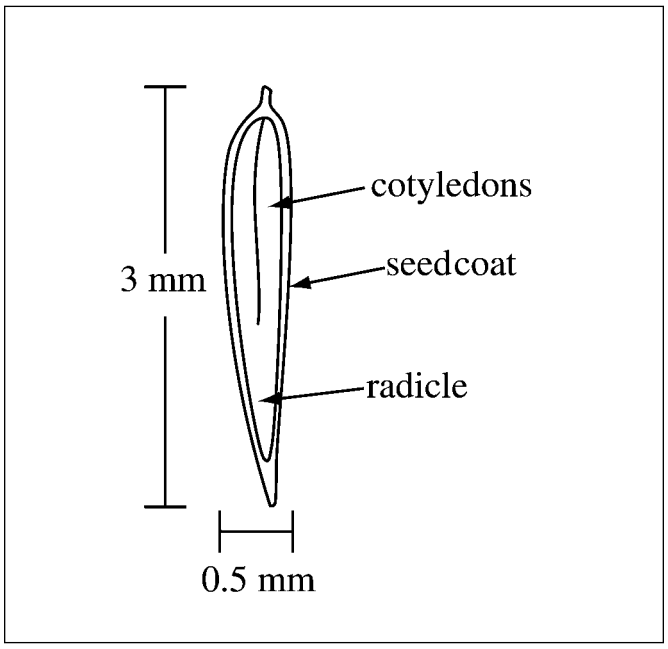


Figure 3—*Chamaebatiaria millefolium*, fernbush: longitudinal section through a seed.



Irrigated plants may begin flowering during the second growing season (Shaw 1995). Plants flower from June to September (Hitchcock and others 1961; Phillips 1949) with irrigation prolonging the flowering season (Shaw 1995). Fruits ripen from August to October.

Collection of fruits, seed extraction, cleaning, and storage. Fruits are harvested by clipping or stripping inflorescences when they are dry and brown, but before follicles open. Seeds can also be collected by briskly shaking or beating the inflorescences once the follicles begin dehiscing. Most follicles open during air-drying, releasing the seeds. Debris may then be removed with screens or a seed blower. Larger collections may be cleaned using air-screen machines. For 2 Idaho seedlots produced with irrigation, the number of seeds per seed weight averaged 3,700,000/kg (1,700,000/lb) (Hurd 1995). Storage requirements and seed longevity have not been determined, but the seeds are probably orthodox in storage behavior.

Pregermination treatments and germination and viability tests. Fresh seeds are nondormant, whereas stored seeds require 1 to 3 months of chilling to relieve dormancy (McDorman 1994; Phillips 1949; Young and Young 1986, 1992). The optimum temperature range for germination of southwestern populations is 18 to 26 °C (Phillips 1949).

C

Fernbush germination has received little study. Shaw (1995) examined the germination of 3 seed collections. Nampa, ID, and Sun Valley, ID, collections were harvested from irrigated plantings of seeds from a single unknown source. The third collection was from an irrigated Sante Fe, NM, planting of seeds from a western New Mexico source. All 3 collections were cleaned and held in dry storage for 4 to 5 months before testing. Total germination percentage of the Sante Fe, NM, and Sun Valley, ID, seed collections (but not the Nampa, ID, seed collection) was greater when untreated seeds were incubated at 20/10 °C (8 hours/16 hours) than at 15 °C for 28 days. A 28-day wet chilling at 3 to 5 °C (table 1) improved the total germination percentage of all seed collections when they were subsequently incubated at either 15 °C or 20/10 °C for 28 days.

Viability of fernbush seeds may be tested as follows: first, the seeds are soaked in water at room temperature for 1 hour, then the water is drained away. A horizontal slit should be made across the center of each seed without cutting it in half. Seeds are then submerged in a 1% solution of 2,3,5-triphenyl tetrazolium chloride for 6 hours at room temperature. Evaluate as described by Peters (2000) for Rosaceae III. The embryos may be read in place. The endosperm of viable seeds is living and will stain red (Hurd 1995).

Nursery practice. Nursery plantings should be made in late fall or early winter. As an alternative, artificially wet-chilled seeds may be planted in early spring. Fernbush seeds are small and must be sown on the soil surface or with a very light covering of sand or soil. Seedlings develop rapidly with irrigation and reach an adequate size for lifting after 1 growing season (Shaw 1995).

Seeds for production of container stock should be wet-chilled before planting. Survival of germinants moved from seeding flats to production containers is low (Everett 1957). Better establishment is obtained by sowing seeds directly into containers and thinning to 1 seedling per container. Developing seedlings are easily moved from small to larger containers (Phillips 1949). Seedlings should be grown in a well-drained medium.

Direct seeding. Seeds should be planted in fall or early winter. Seedlings emerge in spring from seeds naturally dispersed in late summer on rough or mulched soil surfaces (Mackie 1995; McDorman 1994; Shaw 1995). Naturally occurring seedlings generally establish where vegetative competition is limited (Shaw 1995).

Table 1—*Chamaebatiaria millefolium,* fernbush: germination test conditions and results

Source	Elevation (m)	Origin	Cold, wet chill (days)*	% Germination‡ 15 °C Incub†	% Germination‡ 20/10 °C Incub†	Seed fill (%)	Seed viability (%)
Nampa, ID	831	Unknown§	0	3	1	100	96
			28	72	65	100	96
Sun Valley, ID	1,773	Unknown§	0	12	20	100	86
			28	33	44	100	86
Santa Fe, NM	2,134	W New Mexico	0	9	22	100	85
			28	58	60	100	85

* Chilling temperature = 3 to 5 °C.
† Incub = incubation time = 28 days; seeds were exposed to 8 hours of light (PAR = 350 M m/sec) each day with temperatures of either constant 15 °C or 8 hours of 20 °C and 16 hours of 10 °C. In the alternating temperature regime, plants were exposed to light during the high-temperature period.
‡ Based on the percentage of viable seeds to germinate normally.
§ The Nampa and Sun Valley, ID, plants were grown from the same unknown seed source.

References

Albee BJ, Schultz LM, Goodrich S. 1988. Atlas of the vascular plants of Utah. Occ. Pub. 7. Salt Lake City: Utah Museum of Natural History. 670 p.

Bailey LH. 1902. Cyclopedia of American horticulture. Volume 4, R–Z. New York: Macmillan: 1686 p.

Davis RJ. 1952. Flora of Idaho. Provo, UT: Brigham Young University Press. 836 p.

Eggler WA. 1941. Primary succession on volcanic deposits in southern Idaho. Ecological Monographs 3: 277–298.

Everett PC. 1957. A summary of the culture of California plants at the Rancho Santa Ana Botanic Garden. Claremont, CA: Rancho Santa Ana Botanic Garden. 223 p.

Fikenscher LH, Hegnauer R, Ruijgrok HWL. 1981. Distribution of hydrocyanic-acid in Cormophyta: 15. New observations on cyanogenesis in Rosaceae. Planta Medica 41: 313–327.

Hawksworth FG, Mathiasen RL. 1978. Hosts of juniper mistletoe at Walnut Canyon National Monument, Arizona, USA. Great Basin Naturalist 38: 89.

Hickman JC, ed. 1993. The Jepson manual higher plants of California. Berkeley: University of California Press. 1400 p.

Hitchcock CL, Cronquist A, Ownbey M, Thompson JW. 1961. Vascular plants of the Pacific Northwest: 3. Saxifragaceae to Ericaceae. Seattle: University of Washington Press. 614 p.

Hurd EG. 1995. Unpublished data, 1994–1995. Boise, ID: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Research Station.

Kirkwood JE. 1930. Northern Rocky Mountain trees and shrubs. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press. 340 p.
Mackie F. 1995. Personal communication. Sun Valley, ID.
McArthur ED. 1984. Natural diversity of western range shrubs. In: Cooley JL, Cooley JH, eds. Proceedings, Workshop on Natural Diversity in Forest Ecosystems; 1982 November 29–December 1; Athens, GA. Athens: University of Georgia, Institute of Ecology: 193–209.
McArthur ED, Sanderson SC. 1985. A cytotaxonomic contribution to the western North American rosaceous flora. Madroño 32: 24–28.
McArthur ED, Stutz HC, Sanderson SC. 1983. Taxonomy, distribution, and cytogenetics of *Purshia, Cowania*, and *Fallugia* (Rosoideae, Rosaceae). In: Tiedemann AR, Johnson KL, comps. Proceedings, Symposium on Research and Management of Bitterbrush and Cliffrose in Western North America; 1982 April 13–15; Salt Lake City, UT. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-152. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station: 4–24.
McDorman W. 1994. Unpublished data. Ketchum, ID: High Altitude Gardens.
Merkle J. 1952. An analysis of a pinyon–juniper community at Grand Canyon, Arizona. Ecology 33: 375–384.
Mozingo HN. 1987. Shrubs of the Great Basin. Reno: University of Nevada Press. 342 p.
Munz PA, Keck DD. 1959. A California flora. Berkeley: University of California Press. 1681 p.
Peck ME. 1961. A manual of the higher plants of Oregon. 2d ed. Portland, OR: Binfords & Mort. 936 p.
Peters J. 2000. Tetrazolium testing handbook. Contrib. 29. Las Cruces, NM: Association of Official Seed Analysts. unpaged.
Phillips J. 1949. Southwestern landscaping with native plants. Santa Fe: Museum of New Mexico Press. 140 p.
Rehder, A. 1940. Manual of cultivated trees and shrubs. New York: Macmillan. 996 p.
Shaw NL. 1995. Unpublished data, 1992–1995. Boise, ID: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Research Station.
Van Dersal WR. 1938. Native woody plants of the United States: their erosion control and wildlife values. Misc. Pub. 303. Washington, DC: Civilian Conservation Corps. 362 p.
Welsh SL, Atwood ND, Higgins LC, Goodrich S, eds. 1987. A Utah flora. Great Basin Naturalist Memoirs 9: 1–894.
Wolfe JA, Shorn HE. 1989. Paleoecologic, paleoclimatic, and evolutionary significance of the Oligocene Creede flora, Colorado. Paleobiology 15: 180–198.
Wolfe JA, Wehr W. 1988. Rosaceous Chamaebatiaria-like foliage from the Paleogene of western North America. Aliso 12: 177–200.
Young JA, Young CG. 1986. Collecting, processing and germinating seeds of wildland plants. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 236 p.
Young JA, Young CG. 1992. Seeds of woody plants in North America. Portland, OR: Dioscorides Press. 407 p.

Cupressaceae—Cypress family

Chamaecyparis Spach

white-cedar

Franklin T. Bonner

Dr. Bonner is a scientist emeritus at the USDA Forest Service's Southern Research Station, Mississippi State, Mississippi

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. The genus *Chamaecyparis* occurs naturally on the Atlantic and Pacific Coasts of North America and in Japan and Taiwan. Three species are native to North America, 2 to Japan, and 1 to Taiwan (Sargent 1965). The North American species (table 1) are long-lived evergreens that attain large size. Port-Orford-cedar, the largest, has reached diameters of more than 1 m and heights of near 70 m in old-growth stands (Zobel 1990a). Branching is distinctive, with many-branched twigs and small paired scalelike leaves arranged in fernlike sprays. Another common name is "false cypress" (Little 1979); they are not true cedars (*Cedrus* spp.). Because of their somber beauty and variety of form, white-cedars are often used for ornamental plantings, hedges, and windbreaks (Rehder 1940). They produce valuable timber, the wood being sought for poles, posts, construction timbers, specialty items, and other uses where durability is desired. Atlantic white-cedar wood is especially popular for boats, outdoor furniture, posts, and utility poles (Kuser and Zimmerman 1995).

Geographic races and hybrids. Two geographic races of Atlantic white-cedar have been proposed: var. *henryae* (Li) Little in Georgia, Florida, Alabama, and Mississippi and var. *thyoides* in the area from South Carolina to Maine (Little 1966). Great variation exists within the genus, and numerous horticultural selections have been made of the 3 North America species as well as the Asian ones (Dirr and Heuser 1987; Harris 1990; Little and Garrett 1990; Zobel 1990a). Both interspecific and intergeneric crosses have been successful with certain of the cedars. Alaska-cedar and 2 of the Asian species have been crossed (Yamamoto 1981), and Alaska-cedar has also been crossed with several species of Cupressus (Harris 1990). The most well-known of these crosses is with Monterey cypress (*Cupressus macrocarpa* Hartw. ex Gord.) to produce the widely planted Leyland cypress (*Cupressocyparis* × *leylandii*).

Flowering and fruiting. White-cedars are monoecious. Their tiny inconspicuous yellow or reddish male pollen-bearing flowers and greenish female flowers are borne on the tips of branchlets (Harris 1974). Staminate flowers of Atlantic white-cedar, for example, are about 3 mm long, and the pistillate flowers are approximately 3 mm in diameter (Little and Garrett 1990). Pollination occurs generally from March to May, and cones ripen in September to October. Cones are slow to open fully, and seed dispersal occurs from fall into the following spring (table 2). Cones of Port-Orford-cedar and Atlantic white-

Table 1—*Chamaecyparis,* white-cedar: nomenclature and occurrence

Scientific name & synonym(s)	Common name(s)	Occurrence
***C. lawsoniana* (A. Murr.) Parl.** *Cupressus lawsoniana* A. Murr.	**Port-Orford-cedar,** false cypress, Lawson cypress, Oregon-cedar, Port-Orford white-cedar	SW Oregon (Coos Bay) S to NW California (Klamath River)
***C. nootkatensis* (D. Don.) Spach** *Cupressus nootkatensis* D. Don	**Alaska-cedar,** yellow-cedar, Alaska yellow-cedar, Nootka yellow-cypress, Sitka cypress, yellow cypress	Pacific Coast region from Prince William Sound, Alaska, SW to W British Columbia & W Washington, & S in Cascade Mtns to W & NW & SW British Columbia to California; local in NE Oregon
***C. thyoides* (L.) B.S.P.** *Cupressus thyoides* L	**Atlantic white-cedar,** white-cedar, swamp-cedar, southern white-cedar	Narrow coastal belt from S Maine to N Florida, W to S Mississippi

Source: Little (1979).

C

Table 2—*Chamaecyparis,* white-cedar: phenology of flowering and fruiting

Species	Location	Flowering	Cone ripening	Seed dispersal
C. lawsoniana	Oregon	March	Sept–Oct	Sept–May
C. nootkatensis	Pacific Coast	Apr–May	Sept–Oct*	Oct–spring
C. thyoides	Atlantic Coast	Mar–Apr	Sept–Oct	Oct 15–Mar 1

Sources: Harris (1974), Little (1940).
* Cones require 2 years to reach maturity in the northern part of the range.

cedar mature the same year that they are pollinated, whereas cones of Alaska-cedar, in most of the species' range, take a second year to complete maturation (Harris 1974, 1990). In the extreme southern portion of the range of Alaska-cedar, cones may mature in only 1 year (Owens and Molder 1975). This condition even occurs on trees from more northern origins or from higher elevations when established in seed orchards in warm, southern, coastal sites (El-Kassaby and others 1991). The seeds from these 1-year cones are of size and germination quality equal to seeds from 2-year cones.

The white-cedars bear cones at an early age—5 to 20 years for Port-Orford-cedar (Zobel 1990a) and 3 to 5 years for Atlantic white-cedar (Little and Garrett 1990). Sprays of gibberellin (primarily GA_3) will induce flowering in even younger seedlings of Port-Orford-cedar and Alaska-cedar (Owens and Molder 1977; Pharis and Kuo 1977). The use of GA_3 and supplemental pollination on container-grown Port-Ordford-cedar trees 4 to 6 years from rooting or grafting has shown good potential to produce a large amount of seeds in a short period (Elliott and Sniezko 2000). Mature cones are 6 to 12 mm in diameter, spherical, and are borne erect on branchlets (figure 1). Cones have from 6 to 12 scales, each bearing from 1 to 5 seeds with thin marginal wings (figures 2 and 3) (Harris 1974). The average number of seeds per cone is 7 for Alaska-cedar (Harris 1990) and 8 for Atlantic white-cedar, but less than a third of these seeds may be filled. With controlled crosses in a seed orchard, Port-Orford-cedar averaged as high as 8.6 filled seeds per cone (Elliott and Sniezko 2000). Cone ripeness is normally determined by their exterior color (table 3).

Seedcrops of both western white-cedars can be damaged by larvae of the seedworm *Laspeyresia cupressana* (Kearfott) feeding on seeds in the cones. Larvae of the incense-cedar tip moth—*Argyresthia libocedrella* Busck—mine the cones and seeds of Port-Orford-cedar and can destroy practically the entire seedcrop (Hedlin and others 1980).

Collection of cones. Cones may be collected by hand or raked from the branchlets of standing or felled trees. As with many species, cone production is usually less in dense stands, although local conditions cause much variation (Zobel 1979), and open stands should be favored in collections from natural stands. In a North Carolina study,

Figure 1—*Chamaecyparis nootkatensis,* Alaska-cedar: mature cones.

Figure 2—*Chamaecyparis thyoides*, Atlantic white-cedar: seeds.

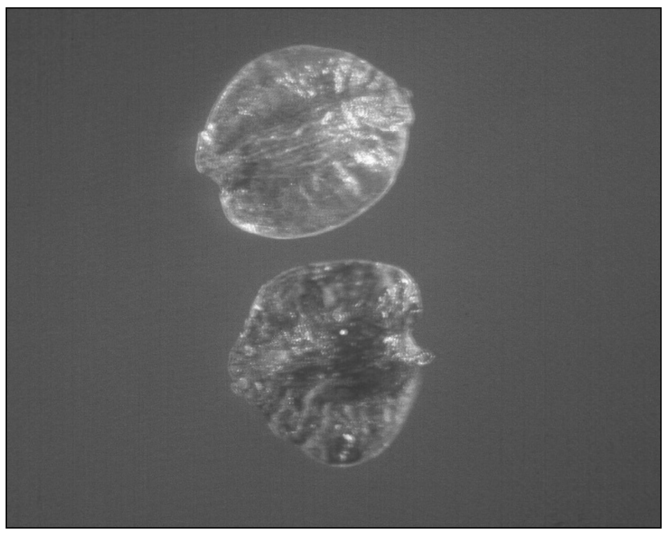
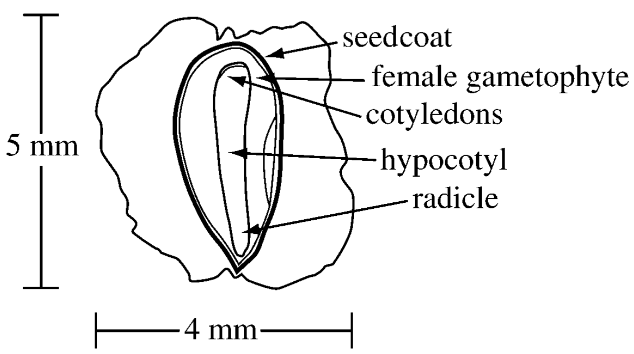


Table 3—*Chamaecyparis,* white-cedar: height, seed-bearing age, seed crop frequency, and color of ripe cones

Species	Height at maturity (m)	Year first cultivated	Minimum seed-bearing age (yrs)	Years between large seedcrops	Color of ripe cones
C. lawsoniana	to 73	1854	5–20	3–5	Greenish yellow to red brown
C. nootkatensis	to 53	1851	—	4 or more	Yellow brown to red brown
C. thyoides	12–27	1727	3–20	1 or more	Greenish with glaucous bloom to bluish-purple & glaucous, finally red brown

Sources: Little (1950), Korstian and Brush (1931), Ouden (1965), Rehder (1940), Sargent (1965).

Figure 3—*Chamaecyparis lawsoniana*, Port-Orford cedar: longitudinal section through a seed.



8- to 10-year-old plantations of Atlantic white-cedar produced good seedcrops that were easy to collect (Bonner and Summerville 1999). When collecting cones of Alaska-cedar in the northern part of the range, precautions are needed to limit the collection to mature, second-year cones. The smaller, greenish-blue, immature, first-year cones are often present on the same branches with the yellow-brown mature cones (Harris 1974).

Extraction, cleaning, and storage of seeds. Cones of white-cedars may be dried by spreading them in the sun or in a warm room, or they may be kiln-dried at temperatures below 43 °C (Harris 1974). Over 90% of the seeds can be recovered from cones of Atlantic white-cedar dried at 35 to 40 °C if 2 or 3 cycles of drying, interspersed with re-wetting of the cones, are used (Bonner and Summerville 1999). Each time the cones are redried, they open a little more. Mature cones of all white-cedars open when dried properly, and their seeds may be extracted by gentle shaking or tumbling. The thin-coated seeds of all species are easily injured and de-winging should not be attempted (Harris 1974).

Cleaning seeds of white-cedars to high purity values is difficult because the small, scalelike leaves are similar to the seeds in size and weight. For seedlots of Atlantic white-cedar, large trash can be removed with round-hole screens, and small trash can be blown off with any number of pneumatic cleaners or seed blowers. These same blowers can be used to upgrade Atlantic white-cedar seedlots by removing many of the empty seeds that occur naturally in this species. Separation is not absolute, of course, and many smaller filled seeds will be lost. With care, however, purities above 90% and filled seed percentages close to 90% can be obtained (Bonner and Summerville 1999). Similar data on the other 2 species are not available. Numbers of cleaned seeds per weight are listed in table 4.

Seeds of the white-cedars are orthodox in storage behavior. They should be stored at or below freezing at a seed moisture content of 10% or below (Allen 1957; Harris 1974). Seeds of Port-Orford-cedar from several origins stored at –15 °C lost no germination capacity over an 11-year period (Zobel 1990b). There are no comparable storage data for Alaska-cedar or Atlantic white-cedar, but the latter species is known to survive at least 2 years of similar storage without loss of viability (Bonner and Summerville 1999). Atlantic white-cedar seeds will also survive for at least 2 growing seasons in natural seedbeds (Little 1950).

Pregermination treatments and germination tests. Germination of white-cedar species is reported to be extremely variable and usually low, but this is due primarily to the naturally low percentages of filled seeds and the failure of seed managers to remove these empty seeds from the seedlots. Port-Orford-cedar germinates readily in the laboratory without pretreatment, and cold stratification does not appear to even improve germination rate (Zobel 1990b). Alaska-cedar exhibits a dormancy that can be somewhat overcome by warm incubation followed by cold stratification, but optimum schedules have not been determined (Harris 1990). In laboratory testing of germination, stratifi-

C

Table 4—*Chamaecyparis*, white-cedar: seed yield data

		Cleaned seeds/weight			
	Seed wt/	Range		Average	
Species	cone wt	/kg	/lb	/kg	/lb
C. lawsoniana	20	176,400–1,323,000	80,000–600,000	463,000	210,000
C. nootkatensis	—	145,500–396,900	66,000–180,000	238,140	108,000
*C. thyoides**	20	926,100–1,102,500	420,000–500,000	1,014,300	460,000

Sources: Harris (1974), Korstian and Brush (1931), Swingle (1939).
* 1.64 kg (3.46 lb) of seeds were obtained from 1 bushel of cones (Van Dersal 1938).

cation of 21 days at 3 to 5 °C has been recommended (ISTA 1993). In nursery sowing, however, environmental conditions are seldom as favorable as those in the laboratory, so longer pretreatments are usually beneficial. One promising pretreatment schedule is moist stratification for 30 days at alternating temperatures of 20 and 30 °C, followed by 30 days at 5 °C (Harris 1974). The beneficial effect of warm incubation suggests that many of the seeds are not quite fully matured, and the incubation period enhances maturation in the same manner as warmer temperatures were shown to speed up cone ripening (Owens and Molder 1975).

Atlantic white-cedar has a variable dormancy also, although probably not as deep as that of Alaska-cedar. Some lots will germinate completely in the laboratory without any pretreatment (table 5). Recent tests with samples from North Carolina indicate that maximum germination in 28 days at good rates requires 4 weeks of moist stratification at 3 °C. Official test prescriptions (ISTA 1993) call for 90 days of stratification at 3 °C for germination within the same time period. Extremely slow germination has been reported in nursery beds in New Jersey (Little 1950), so some stratification would certainly be recommended. Germination is epigeal.

Nursery practice. For all 3 species of North American white-cedars, spring-sowing of stratified seeds is recommended. Port-Orford-cedar has the least dormancy and may only require 30 days of cold stratification. In England this species is normally not stratified at all (Aldous 1972). Alaska-cedar and Atlantic white-cedar have deeper levels of dormancy, and more extended pretreatments are necessary. Warm incubation at alternating temperatures, followed by cold stratification (as described in the previous section), has been recommended for both of these species (Dirr and Heuser 1987). Seeds from the more southern sources of Atlantic white-cedar seem to be not so dormant, and 30 to 60 days of cold stratification alone may be sufficient. Experience with Port-Orford-cedar in western nurseries suggests covering the sown seeds with 3 to 6 mm ($^1/_{10}$ to $^1/_4$ in) of soil and calculating sowing rates to produce 320 to 530 seedlings/m^2 (30 to 50/ft^2). One kilogram (2.2 lb) of Port-Orford-cedar seeds should produce about 284,000 plantable seedlings (Harris 1974). Shading the seedbeds until midseason of the first year may also be beneficial. For field planting, 2+0 stock is commonly used in the western United States, although 2+1 transplants are favored for Port-Orford-cedar in England (Harris 1974). For Atlantic white-cedar, 2+0 seedlings are used in New Jersey and 1+0 seedlings in North Carlina (Kuser and Zimmerman 1995).

All white-cedars can be propagated vegetatively and are commonly produced this way for the ornamental market. Port-Orford-cedar cuttings should be taken between September and April, treated with indole butyric acid (IBA) powder (3,000 to 8,000 ppm), and placed in peat or perlite with mist and bottom heat (Dirr and Heuser 1987). Zobel (1990a) suggests taking cuttings from tips of major branches from lower branches of young trees. Alaska-cedar cuttings need 8,000 or more ppm of IBA, and cuttings should be taken in late winter to early spring (Dirr and Heuser 1987). After 4 years, growth of outplanted rooted cuttings was equal to that of seedlings in British Columbia (Karlsson 1982). Atlantic white-cedar cuttings taken in mid-November and treated with auxins also root very well (Dirr and Heuser 1987). With auxins and bottom heat in mist-beds, 90% rooting can be expected. Early comparisons show that growth of seedlings and stecklings (rooted cuttings) to be about the same (Kuser and Zimmerman 1995).

Table 5—*Chamaecyparis,* white-cedar: stratification periods and germination test conditions and results

Species	Test conditions: Stratification (days) Warm*	Cold†	Temp (°C) Day	Night	Days	Test results: Germ energy (%)	Days	Germ capacity (%)	Soundness (%)	Samples
C. lawsoniana	0	0	30	20	28	44	14	48	48	9
	0	0	30	20	60	24	34	52	—	60
C. nootkatensis	58	30	30	20	22	10	11	12	51	1
	0	30–90	30	20	41	0	—	0	57	3
	0	0	30	20	28–55	0	—	0	54	8
C. thyoides	0	0	30	20	60	—	—	84	—	11
	0	90	30	20	28	—	—	—	—	—

Source: Harris (1974).
* At alternating temperatures of 30 and 20 °C.
† At 5 °C.
‡ Seeds were exposed to light during the warm period.
§ A constant temperature of 20 °C is also suitable (ISTA 1993).

References

Aldhous JR. 1972. Nursery practice. For. Comm. Bull. 43. London: Forestry Commission. 184 p.

Allen GS. 1957. Storage behavior ofconifer seeds in sealed containers held at 0 °F., 32 °F., and room temperature. Journal of Forestry 55: 278–281.

Bonner FT, Summerville KO. 1999. Production and quality of Atlantic white-cedar seed in coastal North Carolina. In: Shear TH, Summerville KO, eds. Symposium, Atlantic white-cedar: Ecology and Management. 1997 August 6–7; Newport News, VA. Gen. Tech. Rep. SRS-27. Asheville, NC: USDA Forest Service, Southern Research Station. 76–79.

Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation: from seed to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Elliott L, Sniezko RA. 2000. Cone and seed production in a Port-Orford-cedar containerized orchard. In: Hansen EM, Sutton W, eds. *Phytophthora* diseases of forest trees. IUFRO WP7.02.09. Proceedings, 1st International Meeting on *Phytophthoras* in Forest and Wildland Ecosystems. 1999 Auugust 30–September 3; Grants Pass, OR. Corvallis: Oregon State University: 105–106.

El-Kassaby YA, Maze J, MacLeod DA, Banerjee S. 1991. Reproductive cycle plasticity in yellow cedar (*Chamaecyparis nootkatensis*). Canadian Journal of Forestry Research 21: 1360–1364.

Harris AS. 1974. *Chamaecyparis* Spach, white-cedar. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 316320.

Harris AS. 1990. *Chamaecyparis nootkatensis* (D. Don) Spach, Alaska-cedar. In: Burns RM, Honkala BH, tech. coord. Silvics of North America. Volume 1, Conifers. Agric. Handbk. 654. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 97–102.

Hedlin AF, Yates HO III, Tovar DC, Ebel BH, Koerber TW, Merkel EP. 1980. Cone and seed insects of North American conifers. FAO North American Forestry Commission, Study Group on Forest Insects and Diseases. Ottawa: Canadian Forestry Service. 122 p.

ISTA [International Seed Testing Association]. 1993. International rules for seed testing. Rules 1993. Seed Science and Technology 21 (Suppl.): 1–259.

Karlsson I. 1982. Propagation of Alaska yellow cedar (*Chamaecyparis nootkatensis* [D. Don] Spach.) by rooted cuttings for production planting. Proceedings of the International Plant Propagators' Society 31(1981): 112–116.

Korstian CF, Brush WD. 1931. Southern white cedar. Agric. Tech. Bull. 251. Washington, DC: USDA. 75 p.

Kuser JE, Zimmerman GL. 1995. Restoring Atlantic white-cedar swamps: techniques for propagation and establishment. Tree Planters' Notes 46(3): 78–85.

Little EL Jr. 1966. Varietal transfers in *Cupressus* and *Chamaecyparis*. Madroño 18(6): 161–167.

Little EL Jr. 1979. Checklist of United States trees (native and naturalized). Agric. Handbk. 541. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service. 375 p.

Little S Jr. 1940. Seed fall of Atlantic white-cedar. Tech. Note 26. Philadelphia: USDA Forest Service, Allegheny Forest Experiment Station. 1 p.

Little S Jr. 1950. Ecology and silviculture of white-cedar and associated hardwoods in southern New Jersey. Yale University School of Forestry Bulletin 56: 1–103.

Little S Jr, Garrett PW. 1990. *Chamaecyparis thyoides* (L.) B.S.P., Atlantic white-cedar. In: Burns RM, Honkala BH, tech. coord. Silvics of North America. Volume 1, Conifers. Agric. Handbk. 654. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 103–108.

Ouden PD. 1965. Manual of cultivated conifers. The Hague: Martinus Nijhoff. 526 p.

Owens JN, Molder M. 1975. Pollination, female gametophyte, and embryo and seed development in yellow cedar (*Chamaecyparis nootkatensis*). Canadian Journal of Botany 53: 186–199.

Owens JN, Molder M. 1977. Cone induction in yellow cypress (*Chamaecyparis nootkatensis*) by gibberellin A_3 and the subsequent development of seeds within the induced cones. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 7: 605–613.

Pharis RP, Kuo CG. 1977. Physiology of gibberellins in conifers. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 7: 299–325.

Rehder A. 1940. Manual of cultivated trees and shrubs hardy in North America. 2nd ed. New York: Macmillan. 996 p.

Sargent CS. 1965. Manual of the trees of North America (exclusive of Mexico). 2nd ed., corrected and reprinted. New York: Dover. 934 p.

Swingle CF, comp. 1939. Seed propagation of trees, shrubs, and forbs for conservation planting. SCS-TP-27. Washington, DC: USDA Soil Conservation Service. 198 p.

Van Dersal WR. 1938. Native woody plants of the United States: their erosion-control and wildlife values. Misc. Pub. 303. Washington, DC: USDA. 362 p.

Yamamoto C. 1981. [in Japanese, English summary: Possibilities of interspecific hybridization between *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* and some other *Chamaecyparis* species]. Journal of the Japanese Forestry Society 63: 311–319.

Zobel DB. 1979. Seed production in forests of *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana*. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 9: 327–335.

Zobel DB. 1990a. *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* (A. Murr.) Parl., Port-Orford-cedar. In: Burns RM, Honkala BH, tech. coord. Silvics of North America. Volume 1, Conifers. Agric. Handbk. 654. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 88–96.

Zobel DB. 1990b. Effects of low temperature, seed source, and seed age on germination of *Chamaecyparis lawsoniana*. Canadian Journal of Forest Research 20: 1053–1059.

C

Bignoniaceae—Trumpet-creeper family

Chilopsis linearis (Cav.) Sweet

desert-willow

Arthur W. Magill, Carol Miller, and Jane E. Rodgers

Dr. Magill retired from USDA Forest Service's Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experimental Station; Ms. Miller was a propagationist at the USDI National Park Service Joshua Tree National Park Center for Arid Lands Restoration and Native Plant Nursery, Twentynine Palms, California; Ms. Rodgers, is a restoration ecologist at the Point Reyes National Seashore Point Reyes Station, California

Synonyms. *C. saligna* D. Don, C. *linearis* var. *originaria* Fosberg, *C. linearis* var. *glutinosa* (Engelm.) Fosberg, C. *linearis* var. *arcuata* Fosberg.

Other common names. false-willow, *jano,* flowering-willow, desert catalpa, catalpa-willow.

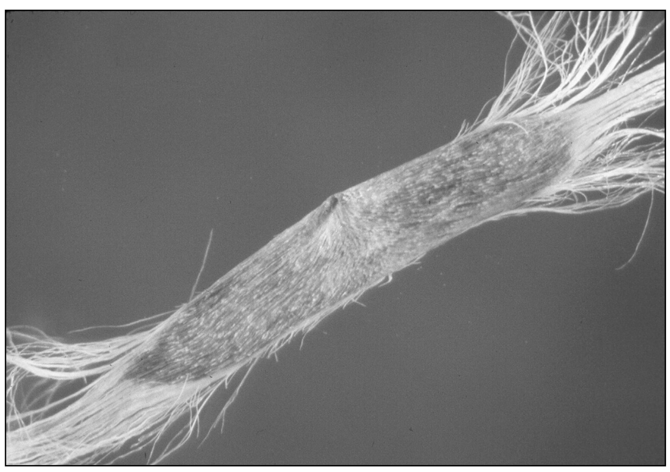
Growth habit, occurrence, and use. Desert-willow grows along dry washes and streams in the desert between 450 and 1,500 m of elevation from southern California through southern Utah to western Texas and southward into Mexico and Lower California. It is a deciduous shrub or small tree that attains heights of 3 to 7.5 m or occasionally more. Growth can be rapid, up to 1 m annually (Munz 1979). The plant is useful for wildlife cover, erosion control, restoration, stream stabilization, and ornamental plantings in arid regions (McMinn 1959; Bainbridge and Virginia 1989; Munz 1959). Seed pods and flowers are edible, but the major use for Native American people was the wood (for house frames, granaries, and bows) and the fibrous bark (for weaving nets, shirts, and breechclouts) (Bainbridge and Virginia 1989).

Flowering and fruiting. Desert-willow produces perfect flowers between April and August throughout its range (Magill 1974; McMinn 1959). The fruit is a 2-celled capsule about 6 mm in diameter and from 10 to 30 cm long. It ripens from late summer to late fall (Afanasiev 1942) and persists through winter (Little 1950). The numerous light-brown oval seeds are about 8 mm long and have a fringe of soft white hairs on each end (figures 1 and 2).

Collection, extraction, and storage. Seedpods can be hand-picked after late September and through the winter months. Care must be taken not to pick unripened fruits—the fruits on a tree may mature unevenly because of their long flowering period (Engstrom and Stoeckeler 1941). Seed extraction simply requires that the pods be spread out, dried, beaten lightly, and shaken, and then the seeds screened out. Each 45 kg (100 lb) of dried pods should produce 14 to 23 kg (30 to 50 lb) of clean seeds, which number from 88,200 to 282,240/kg (40,000 to 128,000/lb) and average 189,130/kg (86,000/lb) (Magill 1974). Commercial seedlots have averaged 92% in purity and 87% in soundness (Magill 1974). These seeds are orthodox in storage behavior, so cold, dry storage conditions are recommended for storage. Seeds have been successfully propagated after 4 years of refrigerated storage at 7 °C (CALR 1993).

Germination. Desert-willow seeds are not dormant, but storage for several days in wet sand or between wet blotter paper will speed germination. In germination tests 1,000 seeds were placed in a sand or water medium for 21 to 60 days with a night temperature of 20 °C and a day temperature of 30 °C (Engstrom and Stoeckeler 1941; Magill 1974). Germination averaged 14 to 60% in 9 to 30 days and germinative capacity ranged from 26 to 100% (Magill 1974). Average germination using blotter paper is 80% (CALR 1993).

Figure 1—*Chilopsis linearis*, desert-willow: seed.

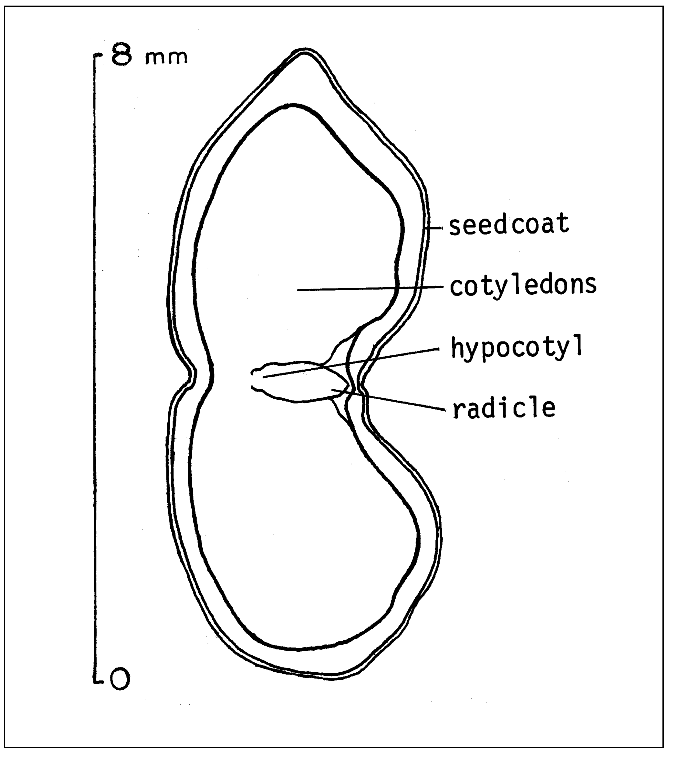


C

Nursery field practice and seedling care. Desert-willow seeds may decay unless sown in spring soon after the soil warms up. Sowing depth should be 6 mm ($^1/_4$ in). A ratio of seven times as many viable seeds as the desired number of usable seedlings is required to grow nursery stock (Magill 1974). Damping-off can be a problem.

Desert-willow may also be propagated from cuttings (Magill 1974); cuttings should be handled carefully and allowed to produce an extensive rootball before transplanting. Mature plants grown in ~57-liter (15-gal) pots and 0.8-m (30-in) tubes have been successfully outplanted as windbreaks and for desert restoration at Joshua Tree National Park (CALR 1993).

Figure 2—*Chilopsis linearis*, desert-willow: longitudinal section through a seed.



References

Afanasiev M. 1942. Propagation of trees and shrubs by seed. Circ. C-106. Oklahoma Agricultural Experiment Station. 43 p.

Bainbridge DA, Virginia RA. 1989. Restoration in the Colorado Desert: Species Notes. Unpublished manuscript prepared for the California Department of Transportation.

[CALR] Center for Arid Lands Management. 1993. Seed test data filed 1989–1993. Twentynine Palms, CA: USDI National Park Service, Joshua Tree National Park.

Engstrom HE, Stoeckeler JH. 1941. Nursery practice for trees and shrubs suitable for planting in the Prairie-Plains. Misc. Pub. 434. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service. 159 p.

Little EL Jr. 1950. Southwestern trees: a guide to the native species of New Mexico and Arizona. Agric. Handbk. 9. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service. 190 p.

Magill AW. 1974. *Chilopsis linearis*, desertwillow. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 321–322.

McMinn HG. 1959. An illustrated manual of California shrubs. Berkeley: University of California Press. 663 p.

Munz PA, Keck DD. 1959. A California flora. Berkeley: University of California Press. 1681 p.

Munz PA. 1979. A California flora. Berkeley: University of California Press. 1905 p.

C

Pyrolaceae—Shinleaf family

Chimaphila Pursh

chimaphila

Don Minore

Dr. Minore retired from the USDA Forest Service's Pacific Northwest Research Station

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. Taxonomists sometimes differ when classifying plants in the genus *Chimaphila* (Blake 1914; Camp 1939; Hitchcock and others 1959; Stapf 1930; Takahashi 1987; Traulau 1981; Wordsdell and Hill 1941), but there are at least 4 clearly defined species (table 1). All have a chromosome number (2n) of 28 (Haber and Cruise 1974), and all occur in the Northern Hemisphere (table 1). Pipsissewa, the most widespread species, has been divided into 5 geographically delimited subspecies: *C. umbellata* ssp. *occidentalis* (Rydb.) Hult. in western North America; ssp. *acuta* (Rydb.) Hult. in Arizona and New Mexico; ssp. *mexicana* (DC) Hult. in Mexico; ssp. *cisatlantica* (Blake) Hult. in eastern North America; and ssp. *umbellata* in Europe and Asia (Takahashi 1987).

The chimaphilas are low, usually creeping, evergreen subshrubs (Krüssmann 1984) with alternate leaves that are crowded near the summit of each year's annual growth, giving the appearance of being whorled on the short shoots ("pseudo-whorls"). Those shoots produce annual growth rings (Copeland 1947) and are connected by elongate rhizomes that are as much as 2.5 m long. The rhizomes are slender (not more than a few millimeters in diameter) and yellow or brown. They bear distant buds that are subtended by small scales and associated with single roots. The leaves may persist as long as 7 years in pipsissewa and 8 years in little pipsissewa (Copeland 1947).

Chimaphila leaves are purported to have antibacterial properties. They contain taraxerol, beta-sitosterol, ursolic acid, nonacosane, hentriacontane, isohomoarbutin, renifolin, arbutin, avicularin, hyperoside, several flavonoids, and a compound called chimaphilin (Lucia 1991; Sheth and others 1967; Trubachev and Batyuk 1968; Walewska 1971). Chimaphilin has a quinone structure similar to that of 1,4-naphthoquinone (DiModica and others 1953), and it may be responsible for the medicinal properties attributed to the chimaphilas. The boiled leaves are taken as a liver remedy (Altschul 1973). The plants also have been used as diuretics and to treat rheumatism and fever (Krüssmann 1984). Large quantities of pipsissewa are now being harvested for use as flavoring in a popular beverage.

Flowering and fruiting. Striped pipsissewa usually flowers in its third growing season, but flowering may be delayed in pipsissewa and little pipsissewa until 7 or 8 annual pseudo-whorls of leaves have been produced (Copeland 1947). Flowers are choripetalous, pentacyclic, pentamerous, actinomorphic, and protogynous (Holm 1927; Pyykko

Table 1—*Chimaphila*: nomenclature and occurrence

Scientific name	Common name(s)	Distribution
***C. japonica* Miq.**	**Japanese chimaphila**	Japan, Korea, China, & Taiwan
***C. maculata* (L.) Pursh**	**striped pipsissewa,** striped prince's-pine, spotted wintergreen	Maine & New Hampshire to Ontario, Michigan, & Illinois S to Georgia, Alabama, & Tennessee
***C. menziesii* (R. Br. ex D. Don) Spreng.**	**little pipsissewa,** little prince's-pine	British Columbia, Montana, & Washington S through Oregon & California to Mexico
***C. umbellata* (L.) W. Bart.**	**pipsissewa,** prince's-pine	North America from Alaska to Mexico & from Ontario & New Brunswick to Georgia; Europe (incl. Scandinavia), Eurasia, Japan, & West Indies

Sources: Barrett and Helenurm (1987), Blake (1914), Camp (1939), Fernald (1950), Hill (1962), Nordal and Wischmann (1989), Ohwi (1965), Prain (1960), Traulau (1981).

1968). They have 5-parted calyxes, 5 petals, 10 stamens, 5-chambered ovaries, and short thick styles with wide, 5-pointed stigmas (Krüssmann 1984). The ovary is superior, and there is a well-developed, collar-like disk at the base of the pistil that secretes nectar. Placentation is central-axile, with a massive, 2-lobed placenta intruding into each locule (Pyykko 1968). Those placentae are beset with numerous minute ovules (Copeland 1947). The 1 to 3 (little pipsissewa and Japanese chimaphila) or 2 to 6 (striped pipsissewa and pipsissewa) flowers are borne in pendulous, terminal inflorescences (Krüssmann 1984; Ohwi 1965). In pipsissewa those inflorescences are corymbs; in striped and little pipsissewas, they are cyme-like clusters (Copeland 1947). Flowers are pink or white and slightly fragrant.

Chimaphila pollen grains are packed into polyads composed of indefinite numbers of tetrads (Knudsen and Olesen 1993; Takahashi 1986). Pollination is by insects. In pipsissewa, bumble bees are the most important pollinators but the flowers also are visited by staphylinid beetles (Barrett and Helenurm 1987; Knudsen and Olesen 1993), and there is a small amount of self-pollination (Barrett and Helenurm 1987). Differences in the flower preferences of the bumble bee species involved may help to prevent interbreeding between pipsissewa and striped pipsissewa during a short overlap in flowering periods where these inter-fertile species grow together (Standley and others 1988).

An average pipsissewa flower produces 308,800 pollen grains and 5,587 ovules—a pollen to ovule ratio of 58 (Barrett and Helenurm 1987). In central New Brunswick, Canada, anthesis occurs over a 30-day period in July (Helenurm and Barrett 1987). In the Pacific Northwest, pipsissewa flowers may be found from June until August (Hitchcock and others 1959). The fruits matured in about 70 days in New Brunswick, where an average fruit weighed 23 mg, and fruit set was 75% for both self-pollinated and cross-pollinated flowers (Barrett and Helenurm 1987).

The chimaphila fruit is a 5-celled, loculicidally dehiscent capsule that contains very large numbers of tiny seeds (Barrett and Helenurm 1987; Copeland 1947; Pyykko 1968) that sift out of the capsule openings to be borne away by the wind. The embryos of those seeds develop no distinct parts during seed development, but they eventually absorb all of the endosperm except a single layer of cells. The inner integumental cells die and remain in existence as more or less shriveled empty spaces at the ends of the seeds (Copeland 1947). The seedcoat consists only of the outer cell layer of the integument, which loses protoplasm and tannin to become transparent (Pyykko 1968). Although the inner periclinal walls of those transparent testa cells are smooth or slightly pitted in all species, intraspecific differences occur in pipsissewa (Takahashi 1993).

Chimaphila seeds are characterized by very small size, few cells, and little differentiation (figure 1). Each contains a central ellipsoidal mass consisting of an embryo covered by a single layer of endosperm cells, surrounded by a transparent seedcoat that is hollow and shriveled at each end. Ripe seeds are 0.6 to 0.9 mm long and 0.1 mm wide. There are about 1,500,000 seeds/g (42,524,250/oz) (Minore 1994).

Collection and storage of seeds. Seeds can be collected in the field by tapping recently dehisced capsules to dislodge the tiny seeds, which can then be captured in a jar or plastic bag as they drift downward. Recently dehisced capsules may be difficult to find, however, because mature capsules often are not open or have already lost their seeds. Mature closed capsules can be collected, dried, and macerated to recover the seeds. Unfortunately, this latter procedure creates debris that is difficult to separate from the seeds, and seed maturity is not assured. Optimal storage conditions and seed longevity are unknown.

Figure 1—*Chimaphila umbellata*, pipsissewa: seeds (0.1 mm wide and ~ 0.7 mm long, at center) with central embryo and elongate, transparent seedcoat.

Pregermination treatments; germination tests; and nursery practice. Chimaphila seeds have not been sown and germinated successfully. Forest soil that had been sifted to remove debris and rhizome material and then stored outdoors all winter produced pipsissewa seedlings in the spring, however, indicating that there are viable seeds in the soil seed bank and that extensive stratification may be necessary (Wilson 1994). No formal pregermination treatments or germination tests are known. Chimaphila seedlings are seldom found in nature (Holm 1927). Therefore, most natural regeneration may be accomplished by the spread of rhi-

C

zomes. Cultivation attempts often fail (Kruckeberg 1982), but division of the rhizome has been recommended as a suitable method of propagation (Bailey and Bailey 1976). The chimaphilas may be partial root parasites (Kruckeberg 1982). If they are, special practices that include an unknown host may be needed to achieve successful large-scale nursery production.

References

Altschul SVR. 1973. Drugs and foods from little-known plants. Notes in Harvard University Herbaria. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press. 366 p.

Barrett SCH, Helenurm K. 1987. The reproductive biology of forest herbs: 1. Breeding systems and pollination. Canadian Journal of Botany 65(10): 2036–2046.

Blake SF. 1914. A new *Chimaphila* from San Domingo. Journal of Botany (British and Foreign) 52: 169.

Camp WH. 1939. Studies in the Ericales: 4. Notes on *Chimaphila, Gaultheria* and *Pernettya* in Mexico and adjacent regions. Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club 66: 7–28.

Copeland HF. 1947. Observations on the structure and classification of the Pyroleae. Madroño 9(3): 65–102.

DiModica G, Tira S, Borello E. 1953. Su sostanze estratte da *Chimaphila corymbosa* Pursh: struttura delia Chimafillina. Gazetta Chimica Italia 83(6): 393–401 [Biological Abstracts 28: 679, Ref. 6848].

Fernald ML. 1950. Gray's manual of botany. 8th ed. New York: American Book Co. 1632 p.

Haber E, Cruise E. 1974. Generic limits in the Pyrolideae (Ericaceae). Canadian Journal of Botany 52(4): 877–883.

Helenurm K, Barrett SCH. 1987. The reproductive biology of forest herbs: 2. Phenology of flowering and fruiting. Canadian Journal of Botany 65(10): 2047–2056.

Hill AW, ed. 1962. Index Kewensis plantarum phanerogamarum: supplementum septimum. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press. 260 p.

Hitchcock CL, Cronquist A, Ownbey M, Thompson JW. 1959. Vascular plants of the Pacific Northwest: 4. Ericaceae through Campanulaceae. Seattle: University of Washington Press. 510 p.

Holm T. 1927. The flower of *Chimaphila*. Rhodora 29(337): 1–6.

Knudsen JT, Olesen JM. 1993. Buzz-pollination and patterns in sexual traits in North European Pyrolaceae. American Journal of Botany 80(8): 900–913.

Kruckeberg AR. 1982. Gardening with native plants of the Pacific Northwest: an illustrated guide. Seattle: University of Washington Press. 252 p.

Krüssmann G. 1984. Manual of cultivated broad-leaved trees and shrubs. Volume I, A–D. Beaverton, OR: Timber Press. 448 p.

LHBH [Liberty Hyde Bailey Hortorium]. 1976. Hortus third: a concise dictionary of plants cultivated in the United States and Canada. Revised. New York: Macmillan. 1290 p.

Lucia F. 1991. Prince's pine medicinal action traced to specific chemical compounds. In Good Tilth 1991 (August): 6.

Minore D. 1994. Unpublished data. Corvallis, OR: Pacific Northwest Research Station.

Nordal I, Wischmann F. 1989. *Chimaphila umbellata* in Norway. Blyttia 47(4): 183–188 [Biological Abstracts 89(10): AB-133, ref. 101003].

Ohwi J. 1965. Flora of Japan. Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution. 1067 p.

Prain D, ed. 1921. Index Kewensis plantarum phanerogamarum: supplementum quintum. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press. 277 p.

Pryykko M. 1968. Embryological and anatomical studies on Finnish species of the Pyrolaceae. Annales Botanica Fennica 5(3): 153–165.

Rose R, Chachulski CEC, Haase DL. 1996. Propagation of Pacific Northwest native plants: a manual. Volume 2, first ed. Corvallis: Oregon State University Nursery Technology Cooperative. 73 p.

Sheth K, Catalfomo P, Sciuchetti LA, French DH. 1967. Phytochemical investigation of the leaves of *Chimaphila umbellata* var. *occidentalis*. Lloydia 30(1): 78–83.

Standley LA, Kim SS, Hjersted IM. 1988. Reproductive biology of two sympatric species of *Chimaphila*. Rhodora 90(863): 233–244.

Stapf O. 1930. Index Londinensis, Volume I, The Royal Horticultural Society of London, Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew. Oxford, UK: Clarendon Press. 547 p.

Takahashi H. 1986. Pollen polyads and their variation in *Chimaphila* (Pyrolaceae). Grana 25(3): 161–169 [Biological Abstracts 83(11): AB-112, ref. 104628].

Takahashi H. 1987. On the infraspecific variation of *Chimaphila umbellata* (L.) W. Barton (Pyrolaceae). Acta Phytotaxonomica et Geobotanica 38: 82–96 [Biological Abstracts 85(7): AB-122; ref. 65184].

Takahashi H. 1993. Seed morphology and its implications in Pyroloideae. International Journal of Plant Sciences 154(1): 175–186.

Traulau H , ed. 1981. Index Holmiensis: a world index of plant distribution maps. Volume 5, Dicotyledonae. Berlings Arlöv: Swedish Natural Science Council. 258 p.

Trubachev AA, Batyuk VS. 1968. Flavonoidy *Chimaphila umbellata*. Khimiya Prirodnykh Soedinenii (Tashkent) 4(5): 320–321 [Biological Abstracts 51: 2746, ref. 28428].

Walewska E. 1971. Glukozydy fenolowe w rodzinie Pyrolaceae: 1. Herba Polonica 17(3): 242–247 [Biological Abstracts 54(11): 6122, ref. 62908].

Wilson MG. 1994. Personal communication. Portland, OR.

Wordsdell WC, Hill AW. 1941. Index Londinensis, Supplement for the years 1921–35: 1. A–H, The Royal Horticultural Society of London, Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew. Oxford, UK: Clarendon Press. 497 p

C

Oleaceae—Olive family

Chionanthus virginicus L.

white fringetree

John D. Gill, Franz L. Pogge, and Franklin T. Bonner

Dr. Gill and Mr. Pogge retired from the USDA Forest Service's Northeastern Forest Experiment Station; Dr. Bonner is a scientist emeritus at the USDA Forest Service's Southern Forest Experiment Station, Mississippi State, Mississippi

Other common names. old-man's-beard, flowering-ash, grandfather-graybeard.

Growth habit, occurrence, and uses. White fringetree—*Chionanthus virginicus* L.—occurs on rich, well-drained soils of streambanks, coves, and lower slopes but is most abundant in the understory of pine–hardwood forests, especially on moist, acid, sandy loam soils (Goodrum and Halls 1961). It develops best in semi-open situations but is moderately shade-tolerant, being found occasionally in dense understories. Though widely distributed, it usually is a minor part of the total vegetation. White fringetree is a relatively short-lived shrub or small tree and may attain 11 m in height (Rehder 1940). Its range is from southern Pennsylvania and Ohio south to central Florida and westward through the Gulf Coast region to the Brazos River in Texas and to northern Arkansas (Brown and Kirkman 1990).

Fringetrees are planted as ornamentals throughout the South and elsewhere beyond their natural range. The bark is used as a tonic, diuretic, and astringent; it is also used to reduce fever. In Appalachia, a liquid of boiled root bark is applied to skin irritations (Krochmal and others 1969). Twigs and foliage are preferred browse for deer (*Odocoileus* spp.) in the Gulf Coastal Plain but are less preferred in the Piedmont and mountains. Browsing is least in winter. The species is only moderately resistant to browsing, and plants may die when more than a third of the annual growth is removed. The date-like fruits are eaten by many animals, including deer, turkey (*Meleagris gallopovo*), and quail (*Callipepla* spp.). Cattle may eat the foliage (Goodrum and Halls 1961). The date of earliest known cultivation is 1736 (Rehder 1940).

Flowering and fruiting. White fringetree's flowering habit is polygamo-dioecious, although it is functionally dioecious (Brown and Kirkman 1990; Gleason 1963). The white, fragrant flowers are borne in pendant axillary panicles 10 to 25 cm long that appear from March to June, depending on latitude (Brown and Kirkman 1990; Gill and Pogge 1974). The fruit is a dark blue to purple ovoid drupe about 2 cm long (figure 1). It is usually single-seeded (figures 1 and 2); rarely 2- or 3-seeded. Fruits ripen and drop from the trees in July in eastern Texas and as late as October in the northern part of the range (Lay 1961; Van Dersal 1938). Seeds are dispersed beyond the immediate vicinity of the tree by birds and rodents. Plants first produce seeds at 5 to 8 years of age. In eastern Texas, they produced some fruit each year; no seedcrop failure occurred (Lay 1961).

Collection, extraction, and storage. The fruits should be collected from the branches after they have turned purple and before birds remove them, which should be August in the South and September and October in the North (Dirr and Heuser 1987). The pulpy pericarp should be removed by maceration with either mechanical macerators for large lots or kitchen blenders for small lots, or by rubbing the fruits over hardware cloth fine enough to retain the seeds. The pulp may then be washed away. The seeds contain about 40% moisture when they are shed and must be dried to at least 22% if they are to be stored at low temperatures (Carpenter and others 1992). There have been no long-term storage tests of white fringetree seeds reported,

Figure 1—*Chionanthus virginicus*, white fringetree: fruit (drupe, **left**) and seed (**right**).

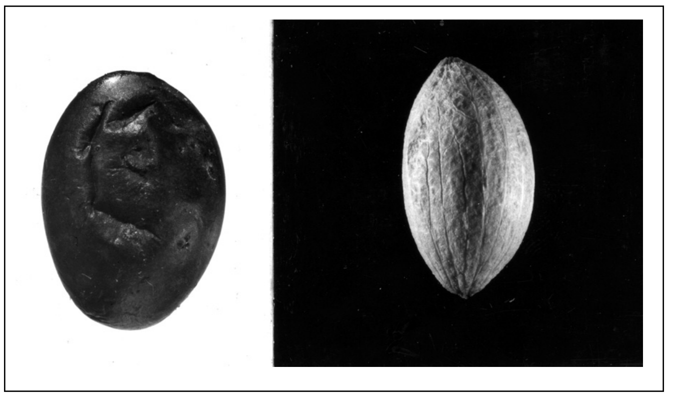
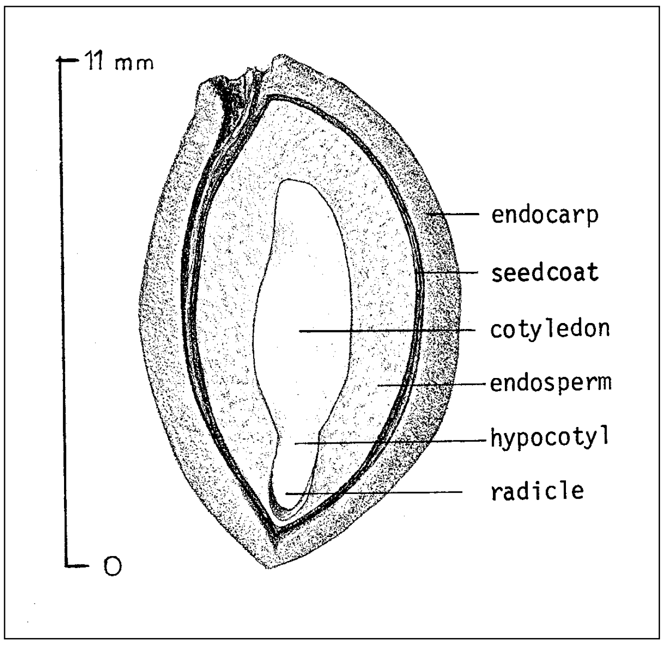


Figure 2—*Chionanthus virginicus*, white fringetree: longitudinal section through a seed.

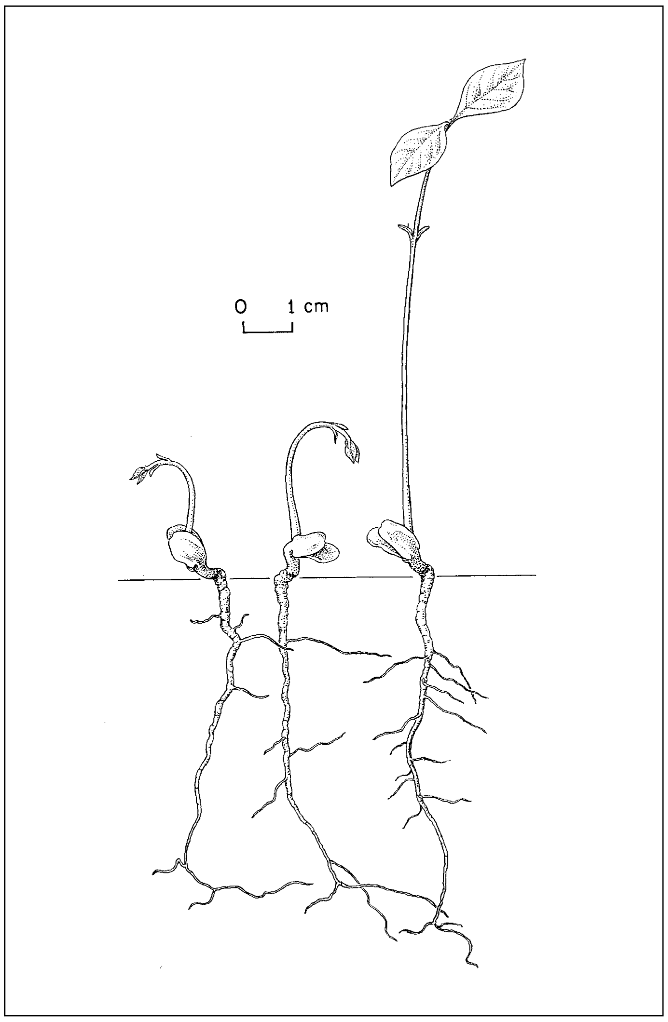


although seeds have remained viable in cold stratification for 1 to 2 years (Gill and Pogge 1974). It is not known if these seeds are orthodox or recalcitrant. There are about 1,400 fruits/kg (630/lb); 1 kg of fruits yielded 330 g of seeds and 1 lb yields 5 1/4 oz. The average number of seeds per weight is 4,000/kg (1,800/lb) with a range of 2,420/kg to 4,410 (1,100 to 2,000/lb) (Gill and Pogge 1974; Swingle 1939; VanDersal 1938).

Germination. Natural germination usually occurs in the second spring after seedfall, the results of an apparent double dormancy or combined dormancy in the seeds. Fringetree seeds first need a period of warm temperatures, commonly 3 to 5 months, during which the radicle develops while the shoot remains dormant. Subsequently, cold exposure during winter overcomes the shoot dormancy (Flemion 1941; Schumacher 1962). In the wild, these temperature exposures occur during the first summer and second winter after seedfall. In a test with 2 seedlots, seeds were held at 20 °C for 1 or more months; stratified at 5 °C for 1 month or more; then sown in flats and held at 20 to 30 °C for 1 year. Germination was about 40% (Gill and Pogge 1974). Good germination (80%) can also be obtained with removal of the hard endocarp; soaking in 1,000 ppm solution of gibberellin (GA_3) for 6 hours; then germinating at 25 °C (Carpenter and others 1992). No official test methods have been prescribed, and the embryo excision method has been recommended for quick viability estimates (Barton 1961; Flemion 1941; Heit 1955). Germination is hypogeal (figure 3).

Nursery practice. Seeds may be sown in either fall or spring. Seeds can be sown soon after they are cleaned, but no later than mid-October in the northern part of the range (Heit 1967). Drills should be set 20 to 30 cm (8 to 12 in) apart and the seeds covered with 6 to 12 mm ($^1/_4$ to $^1/_2$ in) of firmed soil. Beds should be covered with burlap or mulched with straw or leaf mulch until after the last frost the following spring. If spring-sowing is desired, then seeds should be given 3 months of warm storage, then 3 months of cold stratification (Dirr and Heuser 1987). As an alternative for the amateur gardener, seeds can be sown under glass, in boxes with standard compost, during February–March (Sheat 1948). Propagation by layering, grafting, or budding onto ash seedlings is sometimes practiced, but the species is almost impossible to root (Dirr and Heuser 1987).

Figure 3—*Chionanthus virginicus*, white fringetree: seedling development at 1, 4, and 7 days after germination.



References

Barton LV. 1961. Seed preservation and longevity. Plant Science Monographs. London: Leonard Hill Ltd. 216 p.

Brown CL, Kirkman LK. 1990. Trees of Georgia and adjacent states. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 292 p.

Carpenter WJ, Ostmark ER, Sheehan TJ. 1992. Recommendations for germinating fringetree *Chionanthus virginicus* L. seed. Proceedings of the Florida State Horticultural Society 104: 337–340 [Seed Abstracts 1995; 18(5): 1542].

Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation: from seeds to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Flemion F. 1941. Further studies on the rapid determination of the germinative capacity of seeds. Contributions of the Boyce Thompson Institute 11: 455–464.

Gill JD, Pogge FL. 1974. *Chionanthus virginicus* L., fringetree. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 323–325.

Gleason HA. 1963. The new Britton and Brown illustrated flora of the northeastern United States and adjacent Canada. 3 vol. New York: Hafner Publishing.

Goodrum PD, Halls LK. 1961. Fringetree. In: Halls LK, Ripley TH, eds. Deer browse plants of southern forests. New Orleans: USDA Forest Service, Southern and Southeastern Forest Experiment Stations: 10–11.

Heit CE. 1955. The excised embryo method for testing germination quality of dormant seeds. Proceedings of the Association of Official Seed Analysts 1955: 108–117.

Heit CE. 1967. Propagation from seed: 8. Fall planting of fruit and hardwood seeds. American Nurseryman 126 (4): 12–13, 85–90.

Krochmal A, Walters RS, Doughty RM. 1969. A guide to medicinal plants of Appalachia. Res. Pap. NE-138. Upper Darby, PA: USDA Forest Service., Northeastern Forest Experiment Station. 291 p.

Lay DW. 1961. Fruit production of some understory hardwoods. Southeastern Association of Game and Fish Commissions Proceedings 15: 30–37.

Rehder A. 1940. Manual of cultivated trees and shrubs. 2nd ed. New York: Macmillan. 996 p.

Schumacher FW. 1962. How to grow seedlings of trees and shrubs. 2nd ed. Sandwich, MA: F. W. Schumacher. 14 p.

Sheat WG. 1948. Propagation of trees, shrubs and conifers. London: Macmillan. 479 p.

Swingle CF, comp. 1939. Seed propagation of trees, shrubs and forbs for conservation planting. SCS-TP-27. Washington, DC: USDA Soil Conservation Service. 187 p.

Van Dersal WR. 1938. Native woody plants of the United States: their erosion-control and wildlife values. Misc. Pub. 303. Washington, DC: USDA. 362 p.

Fagaceae—Beech family

Chrysolepis Hjelmqvist

chinquapin

Philip M. McDonald

Dr. McDonald is a research silviculturist at the USDA Forest Service's Pacific Southwest Research Station, Redding, California

Synonyms. The 2 species of *Chrysolepis* found in the United States are distinct from their Asian relatives in the genus *Castanopsis* and were placed by Hjelmqvist (1948) in their current genus. This genus was accepted in Hickman's extensive and long-researched flora of California (1993). These American species, which have a floral morphology that is intermediate between *Castanopsis* and *Lithocarpus*, represent the ancient condition of the family Fagaceae (McKee 1990). The common name also has changed throughout the years. Early workers called the species "chinquapin." Later, it became "chinkapin" but more recently it was changed back to "chinquapin" (Hickman 1993; Keeler-Wolf 1988).

Occurrence and growth habit. In North America, the genus *Chrysolepis* consists of 2 species and 1 variety (Hickman 1993), all located in the Pacific Coast region. Giant chinquapin—*Chrysolepis chrysophylla* var. *chrysophylla* (Dougl. ex. Hook) Hjelmqvist —is a tree that ranges from southwestern Washington southward to San Luis Obispo County in the Cascade, Klamath, and Coastal Mountains of California. A remnant stand also exists in El Dorado County in the north central Sierra Nevada. This species achieves its best form from Marin County, California, northward (Griffin and Critchfield 1972) to Lane County, Oregon. Giant chinquapin also has a shrub form—*C. chrysophylla* var. *minor* (Benth.) Munz, often called "golden chinquapin"—that is found throughout the range of its taller brethren.

The second species—*C. sempervirens* (Kellogg) Hjelmqvist—which is always a shrub, has the common name "bush chinquapin." This species is found from the Cascade Mountains of southern Oregon westward in the Siskiyou Mountains of northern California, and southward along the east-facing slopes of the north Coast Range and the west-facing slopes of the Sierra Nevada, San Jacinto, and San Bernardino Mountains (McMinn 1939). Throughout its range, the habitat is characterized as being of low quality with shallow, rocky, and often droughty soils. In western Siskiyou County, California, and in other places where the ranges of the 2 shrub forms overlap, hybridization probably occurs (Griffin and Critchfield 1972).

Giant chinquapin is often found as a single tree or in groves; it rarely occupies extensive areas. This shade-tolerant tree is rarely found in a dominant position; it is more often found in intermediate and codominant crown positions. Pure stands are uncommon and rarely exceed 10 ha (McKee 1990). In the Klamath Mountains of northern California, giant chinquapin shows a distinct preference for mesic conditions, with highest basal areas occurring on north-facing slopes or in mesic canyon bottoms (Keeler-Wolf 1988). In general, best growth is achieved in moist environments with deep and infertile soils (Zobel and others 1976). The shrub forms occupy a plethora of topographic/edaphic sites over an elevational range that varies from 300 to 3,000 m. The shrub forms can be quite extensive and achieve greatest coverage in the extreme environments of xeric sites at higher elevations. Here they dominate, with their area corresponding to the extent of past disturbance. The amount of time that they dominate also can be lengthy, given a lack of seed source for inherently taller competitors. Over a long time span, however, disturbance is necessary for the continued presence of chinquapin. Because of its wide ecological amplitude, chinquapin is part of many associations that include most of the forest-zone conifers and hardwoods on the Pacific Coast. A general pattern for all the species and varieties is that they are at their competitive best on infertile soils (McKee 1990).

Chinquapins are vigorous sprouters and most trees originate as root crown sprouts. The sprouts grow rapidly and outstrip natural conifer seedlings for several years. Mature trees tend to have straight boles and narrow crowns. The largest trees may reach over 33 m in height and 1 to 1.2 m in girth (Sudworth 1908). For shrubs, var. *minor* tends to be stiff and upright in exposed areas and semiprostrate in shaded environments. Bush chinquapin is stiff and upright in all environments.

Use. The light, fairly hard, and strong wood of chinquapin has been used for veneer, paneling, cabinets, furniture, turned products, pallets, and fuel (EDA 1968).

Flowering and fruiting. The flowers of giant chinquapin, which bloom from June through midwinter, and the flowers of the shrubs, which bloom throughout the summer, are unisexual, with staminate and pistillate flowers being borne on the same plant. The staminate flowers are borne in groups of 3 in the axils of bracts, forming densely flowered, erect cylindrical catkins 2.5 to 7.6 cm long; 1 to 3 pistillate flowers are borne in an involucre, usually at the base of the staminate catkins or borne in short separate catkins. At the time of peak blooming in June, each tree is covered with erect creamy white blossoms, which provide a pleasing contrast to the more somber foliage (Peattie 1953).

The fruit consists of 1 to 3 nuts (figures 1 and 2) enclosed in a spiny golden brown bur. The nuts mature in fall of the second year (Hickman 1993). The minimum seed-bearing age (from root crown sprouts) is 6 years (McKee 1990). Giant chinquapin trees have been reported as producing seeds at 40 to 50 years of age but probably do so before this age (McKee 1990). Controversy exists over seed productivity. Sudworth (1908) reported that the tree form is an abundant seeder, but Peattie (1953) noted that although flowering is abundant, fruiting is "strangely shy." Insects, squirrels, and birds often consume most of a given crop. Indeed, Powell (1994) observed tree squirrels (*Sciurus* spp.) cutting burs of large chinquapins during a bumper seed year. By late fall, the ground beneath the trees was covered with burs.

Collection, extraction, and storage. Because of heavy predation by many animals, collectors should hand-pick the burs in late summer or early fall, after they ripen but before they open (Hubbard 1974). The collected burs should be spread out to dry in the sun or in a warm room. After drying, the nuts can be separated from the burs mechanically. The following number of nuts per weight have been recorded (Hubbard 1974; McMinn 1939):

	Nuts/kg	Nuts/lb
giant chinquapin (*C. chrysophylla* var. *chrysophylla*)	1,826–2,420	830–1,100
golden chinquapin (*C. chrysophylla* var. *minor*)	1,540	700
bush chinquapin (*C. sempervirens*)	—	2,640 1,200

Figure 1—*Chrysolepsis chrysophila* var. *chrysophila*, giant chinquapin: nut.

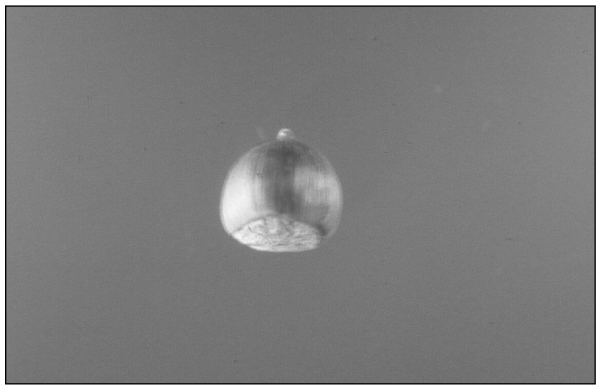
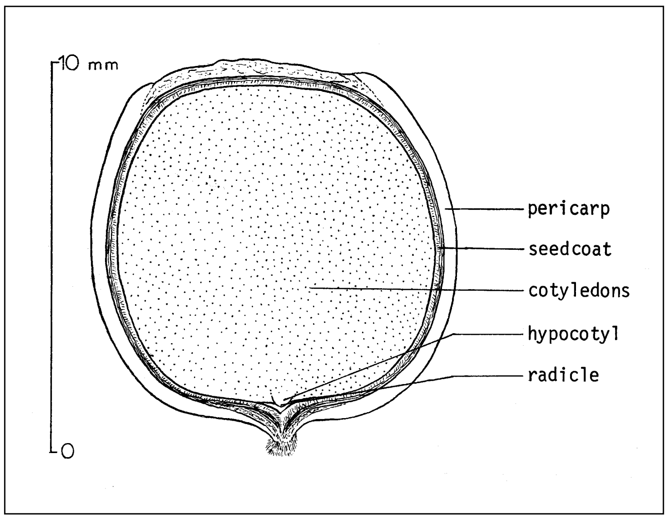


Figure 2—*Chrysolepsis*, chinquapin: longitudinal section through a seed.



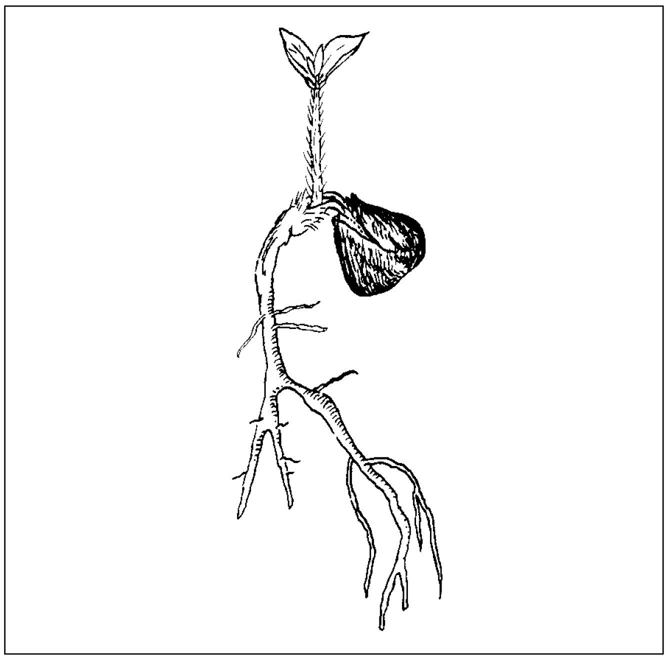
When stored in sealed containers at 6 °C, chinquapin seeds retain their viability well for at least 2 years and probably longer. Viability of 1 sample of giant chinquapin seeds stored in this manner dropped only from 50 to 44% in 5 years (Hubbard 1974).

Pregermination treatments. Mirov and Kraebel (1937) found that no stratification was needed.

Germination. Germination of untreated seeds of giant chinquapin in 3 tests ranged from 14 to 53% (Hubbard 1974)—the poorest of all hardwoods in the Klamath Mountains provenance of southwestern Oregon and northern California (McDonald and others 1983). Mirov and Kraebel (1937) found highest germination values for giant chinquapin to be 50% in 24 days and for bush chinquapin was 30% in 16 days. Germination is hypogeal (figure 3) and best in peat.

C

Figure 3—*Chrysolepsis,* chinquapin: seedling at 1 month after germination



Nursery practice. Little is known about raising chinquapins in nurseries. In a study at the Rancho Santa Ana Botanic Gardens in California, the 3 native species were raised in pots. Some survived through 1 or more potting stages, but none survived after outplantings (Hubbard 1974). Propagation by layering, grafting, or budding is feasible (Hubbard 1974).

Seedling care. Natural regeneration of giant chinquapin usually is sparse or totally lacking. Powell (1994) noted that not a single seedling was present on ground covered with burs beneath large seed trees. McKee (1990) also inferred that regeneration was lacking in environments of deep litter and dense understory vegetation. Sudworth (1908) noted that regeneration was best if seeds were covered, apparently by eroded soil. Keeler-Wolf (1988) found sexually reproduced seedlings and saplings to average about 19/ha (7/ac) in the Klamath Mountains but only in shaded mesic environments. In the Oregon Cascade Mountains, McKee (1990) noted that chinquapin reproduction occurred in light leaf mulch in partial shade, with plantlets that were 15 to 45 cm tall at ages 4 to 12. For bush chinquapin in the northern Sierra Nevada on 10 study areas over a 10-year period, not 1 seedling was found. Although tiny plants looked like seedlings, a gentle tug showed that they were connected to parent-plant root systems. The number of new sprouts averaged over 39,000/ha (16,000/ac) 6 years after site preparation by bulldozer bared the ground (McDonald and others 1994).

Altogether, this evidence suggests that for both natural and artificial regeneration, best seedling care will be achieved with covered seeds in partially shaded, moist conditions. Seedling growth in this environment, however, is unknown.

References

EDA [Economic Development Administration]. 1968. The Hoopa Valley Reservation hardwood study report. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Commerce: 154 p.

Griffin JR, Critchfield WG. 1972. The distribution of forest trees in California. Res. Pap. PSW-82. Berkeley, CA: USDA Forest Service, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station: 118 p.

Hickman JC, ed. 1993. The Jepson manual: higher plants of California. Berkeley: University of California Press. 1400 p.

Hjelmqvist H. 1948. Studies on the floral morphology and phylogeny of the Amentiferae. Botanical Notes Supplement 2(1): 1–171.

Hubbard RL. 1974. *Castanopsis* (D.Don) Spach, chinkapin. In: Schopmeyer CS. tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 276–277.

Keeler-Wolf T. 1988. The role of *Chrysolepis chrysophylla* (Fagaceae) in the *Pseudotsuga*–hardwood forest of the Klamath Mountains of California. Madrono 35(4): 285–308.

McDonald PM, Abbott CS, Fiddler GO. 1994. Response of young ponderosa pines, shrubs, and ferns to three release treatments. Western Journal of Applied Forestry 9(1): 24–28.

McDonald PM, Minore D, Atzet T. 1983. Southwestern Oregon–northern California hardwoods. In: Burns RM, tech. comp. Silvicultural systems for the major forest types of the United States. Agric. Handbk. 445. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 29–32.

McKee A. 1990. *Castanopsis chrysophylla* (Dougl.) A. DC, giant chinkapin. In: Burns RM, Honkala BH, tech. coords. Silvics of North America. Vol. 2, Hardwoods. Agric. Handbk. 654. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 234–239.

McMinn HE. 1939. An illustrated manual of California shrubs. Berkeley: University of California Press. 663 p.

Mirov NT, Kraebel CJ. 1937. Collecting and propagating the seeds of California wild plants. Res. Note 18. Berkeley: USDA Forest Service, California Forest and Range Experiment Station. 27 p.

Peattie DC. 1953. A natural history of western trees. Boston: Houghton-Mifflin. 751 p.

Powell C. 1994. Personal communication. Big Bar, CA: USDA Forest Service.

Sudworth GB. 1908. Forest trees of the Pacific slope. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 441 p.

Zobel DB, McKee A, Hawk GM, Dyrness CT. 1976. Relationships of environment to composition, structure, and diversity of forest communities of the central western Cascades of Oregon. Ecological Monographs 46: 135–156.

Asteraceae–Aster family

Chrysothamnus Nutt.
rabbitbrush

Susan E. Meyer

Dr. Meyer is a research ecologist at the USDA Forest Service's Intermountain Research Station,
Shrub Sciences Laboratory, Provo, Utah

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. Members of the rabbitbrush genus—*Chrysothamnus* spp.—are among the best-known of western shrubs (Johnson 1987; McArthur and Welch 1986; McArthur and others 2004, 1979). The genus is endemic to western North America and is made up of 16 species (Anderson 1986; McArthur and Meyer 1987). It has recently been partially subsumed under the new genus *Ericameria*, formerly an infraspecific taxon within the related genus *Haplopappus* (Anderson 1995; USDA NRCS 2001). Because the durability of this nomenclatural change has yet to be demonstrated, the decision here is to follow the traditional nomenclature (table 1).

Rabbitbrush commonly occurs on sites of natural or human disturbances such as washes, drainage-ways, and quarries; they may also occur as subdominants in later seral vegetation. Their conspicuous golden flowers are a familiar sight in autumn along roadsides throughout the West. Three of the species—rubber rabbitbrush, Parry rabbitbrush, and green rabbitbrush—are widespread, polymorphic taxa made up of multiple subspecies, whereas the remainder are taxonomically simpler and more restricted in distribution. Rubber rabbitbrush is made up of 22 subspecies, many of which are ecologically distinctive. Its more ecologically specialized subspecies are restricted to dunes, rock outcrops, shale badlands, alkaline bottomlands, or montane riparian communities. Most of the widely distributed subspecies are also broad in their ecological requirements but tend to be commonest on disturbed ground. Common garden studies have shown that marked ecotypic differentiation occurs within subspecies for such traits as growth form, growth rate, cold and drought hardiness, competitive ability, flowering time, achene weight, and germination patterns (McArthur and others 1979; Meyer 1997; Meyer and others 1989). Such ecotypic variation is to be expected in other widely distributed species as well. It is therefore important to consider ecotype as well as species and subspecies when selecting seed sources for artificial seeding projects.

Species, subspecies, and populations of rabbitbrush also vary widely in their palatability to livestock and wildlife. Certain unpalatable taxa such as threadleaf rubber rabbitbrush tend to increase on abused rangeland, and considerable energy has been invested in control methods (Whisenant 1987). A tendency to resprout after herbicide spraying, chopping, or burning, combined with an ability to reestablish from seeds, can make rabbitbrush difficult to eradicate (Young and Evans 1974).

Basin and mountain whitestem rubber rabbitbrush races are highly palatable as winter forage for deer (*Odocoileus* spp.), sheep, and cattle, and have been included in seeding mixes for the rehabilitation of big game winter range for over 30 years (Monsen and Stevens 1987). Other species and subspecies also provide winter forage for wildlife and livestock (McArthur and others 2004). Rabbitbrushes are extensively used for mined-land rehabilitation in the West (Romo and Eddleman 1988). Thousands of pounds of wild-land-collected seed are bought and sold annually (McArthur and others 2004; Monsen and others 2004, 1987). Rabbitbrushes may be seeded as pioneer species on harsh mine disturbances for erosion control and site amelioration and often invade such sites on their own (Monsen and Meyer 1990). They can act as nurse plants to facilitate establishment of later seral species, as they generally offer little competition to perennial grasses or later seral shrubs (Frischknecht 1963).

Rabbitbrushes have potential uses in landscape plantings, especially with the recent emphasis on xeriscaping. Rubber rabbitbrush has also been examined as a commercial source of natural rubber and other plant secondary metabolites such as resins (Weber and others 1987).

Flowering and fruiting. The perfect yellow disk flowers of rabbitbrushes usually occur in groups of 5 in narrowly cylindrical heads subtended by elongate, often keeled bracts. The heads are numerous and are clustered in often flat-topped terminal or lateral inflorescences that can be

C

Table 1—*Chrysothamnus,* rabbitbrush: ecology and distribution of some common species and subspecies

Taxon & species	Common name(s)	Geographic distribution	Habitat
SECTION CHRYSOTHAMNUS			
***C. linifolius* Greene** *Ericameria linifolia* (Greene) L.C. Anders.	**spearleaf rabbitbrush,** alkali rabbitbrush	Colorado Plateau N to Montana	Deep alkaline soils; low to mid-elevation
***C. viscidiflorus* (Hook.) Nutt.** *E. viscidiflora* (Hook.) L.C. Anders.	**green rabbitbrush**	Intermountain	Wide amplitude
***C. v.* ssp. *lanceolatus* (Nutt.) Hall & Clements** *E. viscidiflora* spp. *lanceolata* (Nutt.) L.C. Anders.	**Douglas rabbitbrush**	Intermountain	Montane
***C. v.* ssp. *viscidiflorus* (Hook.) Nutt.** *E. viscidiflora* (Hook.) L.C. Anders.	**low rabbitbrush**	Intermountain	Low to mid-elevation
SECTION NAUSEOSI*			
***C. nauseosus* (Pallas ex Pursh) Britt.** *E. nauseosa* (Pallas ex Pursh) Nesom & Baird	**rubber rabbitbrush**	W North America	Wide amplitude
***C. n.* ssp. *albicaulis* (Nutt.) Hall & Clements**	**mountain whitestem rubber rabbitbrush**	Mostly Intermountain Rocky Mtn	Mostly coarse soils; mid-elevation
***C. n.* ssp. *hololeucus* (Gray) Hall & Clements**	**basin whitestem rubber rabbitbrush**	Mostly Great Basin	Mostly coarse soils; low to mid-elevation
***C. n.* ssp. *consimilis* (Greene) Hall & Clements** *E. nauseosa* ssp. *consilimus* (Greene) Nesom & Baird	**threadleaf rubber rabbitbrush**	Mostly Great Basin	Mostly fine soils; low to mid-elevation
***C. n.* ssp. *graveolens* (Nutt.) Piper**	**green rubber rabbitbrush**	W Great Plains; Colorado Plateau	Wide amplitude; low to mid-elevation
***C. n.* ssp. *salicifolius* (Rydb.) Hall & Clements**	**willowleaf rubber rabbitbrush**	N Utah	Montane
***C. parryi* (Gray) Greene** *E. parryi* (Gray) Nesom & Baird	**Parry rabbitbrush**	Scattered; W US	Mostly montane
SECTION PUNCTATI*			
***C. teretifolius* (Dur. & Hilg.) Hall** *E. teretifolia* (Dur. & Hilg.)	**Mojave rabbitbrush,** Jepson green rabbitbrush	Mojave Desert	Rocky washes; hot desert

Sources: Anderson (1995), Deitschman and others (1974), USDA NRCS (2001).

quite showy. Flowering occurs from late July through October, with higher elevation populations flowering earlier. The fruits ripen in September in the mountains but may not be ripe until December in warm desert populations. There may be considerable variation in flowering and fruiting phenology within populations and even on individual plants (Meyer 1997). Each flower has the potential of producing a single narrowly cylindrical achene that is completely filled by the elongate embryo (figures 1 and 2). The achene is topped with a ring of pappus hairs that aid in dispersal by wind. The pappus may also be involved in orienting and anchoring the achene during seedling establishment (Stevens and others 1986). Fully ripened fruits are easily detached from the plant by wind under dry conditions. Abundant flowering occurs most years, but fill is variable. Sometimes there is considerable damage by noctuid moth larvae during seed development. The damaged fruits remain attached to the plant, creating the appearance of an abundant harvest after all the sound fruits have dispersed.

Seed collection, cleaning, and storage. Dry, calm conditions are best for the harvest of rabbitbrush seeds. Fully ripe fruits are fluffy and easily detachable, and they may be stripped or beaten into shoulder hoppers, bags, or boxes. Seed fill must average 30 to 50% in order to attain purities high enough for commercially profitable harvest. On favorable upland sites, harvestable crops occur in 4 of 5 years (Monsen and Stevens 1987). The purity of the bulk-harvested material is usually near 10%. Seeds are often moist at harvest and must be dried before cleaning.

Rabbitbrush seeds are difficult to clean. The elongate achenes are brittle and easily damaged in most mechanical cleaning equipment. Using flail-type cleaners such as barley debearders results in less damage than using hammermills. After initial cleaning, the material can be fanned and screened in a fanning mill to achieve the desired purity. Cleaning removes sticks and large debris, separates the achenes from the inflorescences, detaches the pappus from the achenes, and removes unfilled fruits and other fine debris.

Figure 1—*Chrysothamnus*, rabbitbrush: achenes with pappi intact of *C. viscidiflorus*, Douglas rabbitbrush (**left**) and *C. nauseosus*, rubber rabbitbrush (**right**).

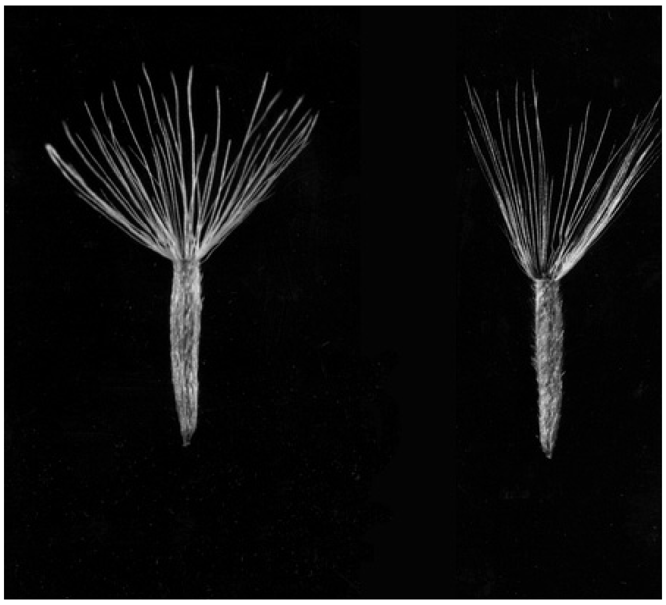
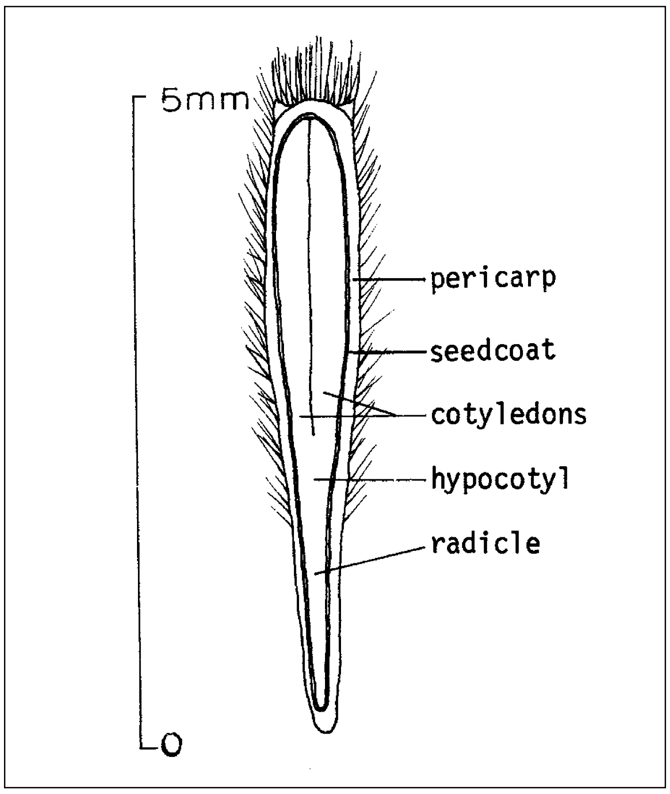


Figure 2—*Chrysothamnus viscidiflorus* spp. *lancedatus*, Douglas rabbitbrush: longitudinal section through an achene.



These steps are necessary to raise purities to 20% or higher and to make it possible to use conventional seeders (Monsen and Stevens 1987).

Achene weight varies substantially among species, subspecies, and populations of rabbitbrush (table 2). In rubber rabbitbrush, weight is correlated with habitat; the largest achenes come from plants that are specialized for growing on dune and badland habitats, and the smallest come from populations on temporarily open saline bottoms (Meyer 1997). There is a ninefold difference in achene weight among populations of rubber rabbitbrush, and other species also show achene weight variation (table 2). This makes it important to consider achene number per unit weight explicitly when calculating seeding rates.

Rabbitbrush seeds are not long-lived in warehouse storage. Substantial loss of viability may occur within 3 years, and storage beyond 3 years is not recommended (Monsen and Stevens 1987; Stevens and others 1981). Seeds should be retested immediately before planting so that seeding rates can be based on current values for pure live seed. Rabbitbrush seedlots with initially low vigor and viability values tend to lose their remaining viability more quickly in storage (Meyer and McArthur 1987). Because of late ripening dates, rabbitbrush seeds are usually held for a year (until the following autumn) before planting. Careful attention to moisture content (7 to 8% is probably near optimum) and storage at low temperature may prolong storage life, but data to substantiate this are lacking.

Germination. Germination requirements for rabbitbrush vary both among and within species. Rubber rabbitbrush germination is best understood (Khan and others 1987; McArthur and others 1987; Meyer and McArthur 1987; Meyer and Monsen 1990; Meyer and others 1989; Romo and Eddleman 1988). Seeds are usually nondormant at high incubation temperatures (30 °C) even when recently harvested, but display variable levels of dormancy at the intermediate temperatures characteristic of autumn seedbeds. Seeds of early-ripening high-elevation collections are most likely to be dormant or slow to germinate at autumn temperatures, whereas seeds of late-ripening warm-desert collections germinate completely and rapidly over a wide temperature range. The conditional dormancy of recently dispersed seeds is removed through moist chilling, so that all seeds are nondormant in the field by late winter. Germination rate at near-freezing temperature is even more closely tied to habitat. Collections from montane sites may

Table 2—*Chrysothamnus,* rabbitbrush: seed yield data

	Cleaned seeds* (x 1,000)/seed weight			
	Mean		Range	
Species	/kg	/lb	/kg	/lb
Section Chrysothamnus				
C. linifolius	1.8	0.8	—	—
C. viscidiflorus	1.8	0.8	1.5–2.0	0.7–0.9
ssp. *lanceolatus*	1.8	0.8	1.1–2.2	0.5–1.0
	1.8	0.8	—	—
ssp. *viscidiflorus*	1.5	0.7	1.1–2.2	0.5–1.0
Section Nauseosi				
C. nauseosus	1.7	0.8	1.5–2.0	0.7–0.9
ssp. *albicaulis*	1.1	0.5	0.9–1.4	0.4–0.6
	1.5	0.7	—	—
ssp. *hololeucus*	1.3	0.6	1.1–1.5	0.5–0.7
	1.5	0.7	—	—
ssp. *consimilis*	1.5	0.7	0.9–2.4	0.4–1.1
	1.7	0.8	—	—
ssp. *graveolens*	1.3	0.6	0.9–1.1	0.4–0.5
ssp. *salicifolius*	0.9	0.4	0-9–1.1	0.4–0.5
C. parryi	0.9	0.4	—	—
Section Punctati				
C. teretifolius	1.3	0.6	—	—

Sources: Belcher (1985), Deitschman and others (1974), Meyer (1995, 1997), McArthur and others (2004).
* 100% purity.

require more than 100 days to germinate to 50% at 3 °C, whereas warm desert collections may reach 50% germination in as few as 5 days. These germination features act in concert with seasonal patterns of temperature and precipitation in each habitat to ensure complete germination in mid to late winter. Germination is often completed just before the snow melts, with little or no carryover of seed between years. The ecotypic variation in germination phenology results in reduced emergence and survival when seed-source habitat is not matched to planting site habitat (Meyer 1990; Meyer and Monsen 1990).

Preliminary data for Intermountain and Mojave Desert populations of other species of rabbitbrush suggest that they share the same basic habitat-correlated germination patterns. Information on germination response to temperature for 6 collections of green rabbitbrush indicates that it differs from rubber rabbitbrush in having 25 °C rather than 30 °C as an optimum germination temperature and in showing some dormancy even at this optimal temperature (table 3) (Meyer 1997). Habitat-correlated germination responses at autumn and winter temperatures were similar for the 2 species and also for collections of Parry, spearleaf, and Mojave rabbitbrushes.

Evaluation of the seed quality for rabbitbrush is not without pitfalls. Reasonably repeatable purity values are obtained when only filled achenes are included as pure seed (Meyer and others 1989). Germination tests for rubber rabbitbrush should be carried out at alternating temperatures of 20 to 30 °C or a constant 25 °C for 28 days (Meyer and others 1989). This procedure is the only one listed in the official testing rules for this genus (AOSA 1993). Seedlots from low and middle elevations should complete germination within 14 days, whereas seedlots from high elevations may still show some dormancy even after 28 days, making post-test viability evaluation essential. Tests at 30 °C are not recommended, even though relative germination percentage (that is, percentage of viable seeds germinating) may be higher because there are indications that 30 °C is more stressful to marginally viable seeds.

Tetrazolium viability testing of rabbitbrush seeds is also somewhat problematical. The embryos must be removed from the achene prior to immersion in the stain because of poor penetration of the stain, even with piercing or cutting of the achene wall. The process of removal often damages the embryo, making the staining patterns hard to interpret. We frequently obtained higher viability estimates from germination tests than from tetrazolium evaluation for these species (Meyer 1997).

Nursery and field practice. Rabbitbrush species are easily propagated as container stock (Deitschman and others 1974). Seeds are sown directly into containers that provide depth for root development, sometimes after a short wet chill to ensure uniform emergence (Long 1986). The seedlings grow rapidly and are ready for outplanting in 3 to 4 months, after a hardening period. They may be outplanted in fall or spring, whenever moisture conditions are optimal. Bareroot propagation of rabbitbrush has also been successful. In spite of considerable among-lot and among-plant variation in seedling size, transplants survive quite well. Fall-seeding in nursery beds is recommended. Plants require less water than most other shrubs and should not be overwatered or fertilized excessively (Monsen 1966).

Rabbitbrushes are among the easiest shrubs to establish from direct seeding, and most plantings on wildland sites use this method. Minimal seedbed preparation is required. Surface planting onto a firm but roughened seedbed in late fall usually results in adequate stands. This planting may be accomplished through aerial seeding; hand-broadcasting; or seeding with a thimble seeder, seed dribbler, browse seeder, or a drill with the drop tubes pulled so that the seed is placed on the disturbed surface behind the disk furrow openers (McArthur and others 2004). Seeds should not be planted too deeply. One millimeter of soil coverage is sufficient. Seeding rates of about 20 to 30 live seeds/m^2 (2 to 3/ft^2) are usually adequate. This is equivalent to about 200 g/ha (ca 3 oz/ac) on a pure live seed basis for a seedlot that averages 1.5 million seeds/kg (680,400/lb). If the seedlot is cleaned to high purity, it may be necessary to dilute it with a carrier such as rice hulls in order to achieve uniform seeding rates. Seedlings emerge in early spring, and young plants grow rapidly, often producing seeds in their second growing season.

Table 3—*Chrysothamnus,* rabbitbrush: germination percentage (as percentage of total viable seeds) after 28 days at 15 °C or at 25 °C, and days to 50% of total germination during 20 weeks at 3 °C for some common species and subspecies

	Germination percentage at 15 °C			Germination percentage at 25 °C			Days to 50% germination at 3 °C		
Species	**Mean**	**Range**	**No.**	**Mean**	**Range**	**No.**	**Mean**	**Range**	**No.**
SECTION CHRYSOTHAMNUS									
C. linifolius	—	—	—	—	—	—	21	—	1
C. viscidiflorus									
ssp. *lanceolatus*	37	29–49	3	64	58–70	3	60	35–82	5
ssp. *viscidiflorus*	58	31–98	3	68	40–96	3	60	35–82	5
SECTION NAUSEOSI									
C. nauseosus									
ssp. *albicaulis*	37	29–45	2	85	78–92	2	41	9–88	2
ssp. *hololeucus*	75	17–97	8	91	74–96	8	21	7–70	12
ssp. *consimilis*	70	26–96	6	91	80–100	6	33	5–108	17
ssp. *graveolens*	76	28–100	7	91	58–100	7	33	10–105	17
ssp. *salicifolius*	25	9–55	6	65	44–92	6	89	60–100	6
C. parryi	—	—	—	—	—	—	34	12–54	4
SECTION PUNCTATI									
C. teretifolius	—	—	—	—	—	—	5	5	1

Sources: Meyer (1997), Meyer and McArthur (1987), Meyer and others (1989).

References

Anderson LC. 1986. An overview of the genus *Chrysothamnus*. In: McArthur ED, Welsh BL, comp. Proceedings, Symposium on the Biology of *Artemisia* and *Chrysothamnus*. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-200. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station: 29–45.

Anderson LC. 1995. The *Chrysothamnus–Ericameria* connection. Great Basin Naturalist 55: 84–88.

AOSA [Association of Official Seed Analysts]. 1993. Rules for testing seeds. Journal of Seed Technology 16(3): 1–113.

Belcher E. 1985. Handbook on seeds of browse-shrubs and forbs. Tech. Pub. R8-TP8. Atlanta: USDA Forest Service, Southern Region. 246 p.

Deitschman GH, Jorgensen KR, Plummer AP. 1974. *Chrysothamnus*, rabbit-brush. In: Schopmeyer CS, ed. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington DC: USDA Forest Service: 326–328.

Frischknecht NC. 1963. Contrasting effect of big sagebrush and rabbit-brush on the production of crested wheatgrass. Journal of Range Management 16: 70–74.

Johnson KL. 1987. The genus *Chrysothamnus*. In: Proceedings, 4th Utah Shrub Ecology Workshop. Logan: Utah State University. 59 p.

Khan MA, Sankhla N, Weber DJ, McArthur ED. 1987. Seed germination characteristics of *Chrysothamnus nauseosus* ssp. *viridulus* (Astereae, Asteraceae). Great Basin Naturalist 47: 220–226.

Long LE. 1986. Container nursery production of *Artemisia* and *Chrysothamnus* species. In: McArthur ED, Welch BL, comps. Proceedings, Symposium on the Biology of *Artemisia* and *Chrysothamnus*. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-200. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station: 395–396.

McArthur ED, Meyer SE. 1987. A review of the taxonomy and distribution of *Chrysothamnus*. In: Johnson KL, ed. Proceedings, 4th Utah Shrub Ecology Workshop. The genus *Chrysothamnus*. Logan: Utah State University: 9–18.

McArthur ED, Stevens R, Shaw NL. 2004. Composite shrubs. In: Monsen SB, Stevens R, eds. Restoring western ranges and wildlands. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station.

McArthur ED, Welch BL, comps. 1986. Proceedings, Symposium on the Biology of *Artemisia* and *Chrysothamnus*. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-200. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station. 398 p.

McArthur ED, Meyer SE, Weber DJ. 1987. Germination rate at low temperature: rubber rabbitbrush population differences. Journal of Range Management 40: 530–533.

McArthur ED, Blauer AC, Plummer AP, Stevens R. 1979. Characteristics and hybridization of important Intermountain shrubs: 3. Sunflower family. Res. Pap. INT-220. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station: 1–82.

Meyer SE. 1990. Seed source differences in germination under snowpack in northern Utah. In: Munkshower F, ed. 5th Billings Symposium on Disturbed Land Reclamation. Volume 1. Pub. 9003. Bozeman: Montana State University, Reclamation Research Unit: 184–191.

Meyer SE. 1997. Ecological correlates of achene mass variation in *Chrysothamnus nauseosus* (Asteraceae). American Journal of Botany 84: 471–477.

Meyer SE, McArthur ED. 1987. Studies on the seed germination biology of rubber rabbitbrush. In: Johnson KL, ed. The genus *Chrysothamnus*. Proceedings, 4th Utah Shrub Ecology Workshop. Logan: Utah State University: 19–26.

Meyer SE, Monsen SB. 1990. Seed-source differences in initial establishment for big sagebrush and rubber rabbitbrush. In: McArthur ED, Romney EM, Smith SD, Tueller PT, comps. Proceedings, Symposium on Cheatgrass Invasion, Shrub Die-off and Other Aspects of Shrub Biology and Management. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-276. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Research Station: 200–208.

Meyer SE, McArthur ED, Jorgensen GL. 1989. Variation in germination response to temperature in rubber rabbitbrush (*Chrysothamnus nauseosus*: Asteraceae) and its ecological implications. American Journal of Botany 76: 981–991.

Meyer SE, Wilson GR, Stevens R. 1989. Proposed rule for *Chrysothamnus nauseosus*. Association of Official Seed Analysts Newsletter 63(1): 30–32.

Monsen SB. 1996. Unpublished data on file. Provo. UT: USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station.

Monsen SB, Meyer SE. 1990. Seeding equipment effects on establishment of big sagebrush on mine disturbances. In: Munkshower F, ed. Fifth Billings Symposium on Disturbed Land Rehabilitation. Volume 1. Pub. 9003. Bozeman: Montana State University, Reclamation Research Unit: 192–199.

Monsen SB, Stevens R. 1987. Seed and seeding characteristics of rabbit-brush. In: Johnson KL, ed. The genus *Chrysothamnus*. Proceedings, 4th Utah Shrub Ecology Workshop. Logan: Utah State University: 41–49 p.

Romo JT, Eddleman LE. 1988. Germination of green and gray rabbitbrush and their establishment on coal mined land. Journal of Range Management 41: 491–494.

Stevens R, Jorgensen KR, Davis JN. 1981. Viability of seed from thirty-two shrub and forb species through fifteen years of warehouse storage. Great Basin Naturalist 41: 274–277.

Stevens R, Jorgensen KR, Davis JN, Monsen SB. 1986. Seed pappus and placement influences on white rubber rabbitbrush establishment. In: McArthur ED, Welch BL, comps. Proceedings, Symposium on the Biology of *Artemisia* and *Chrysothamnus*. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-200. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station: 353–357.

USDA NRCS [USDA National Resources Conservation Service]. 2001. The PLANTS database, version 3.1. Baton Rouge, LA: National Plant Data Center [http://plants.usda.gov].

Weber DJ, Hegerhorst DR, Davis TD, McArthur ED. 1987. Potential uses of rubber rabbitbrush. In: Johnson KL, ed. The genus *Chrysothamnus*. Proceedings, 4th Utah Shrub Ecology Workshop. Logan: Utah State University: 27–34.

Whisenant S. 1987. Improving herbicidal control of rubber rabbitbrush. In: Johnson KL, ed. The genus *Chrysothamnus*. Proceedings, 4th Utah Shrub Ecology Workshop. Logan: Utah State University: 35–40.

Young JA, Evans RA. 1974. Population dynamics of green rabbitbrush in disturbed big sagebrush communities.

Fabaceae—Pea family

Cladrastis kentukea (Dum.-Cours.) Rudd

yellowwood

David F. Olson, Jr., R. L. Barnes, and Jill R. Barbour

Drs. Olson and Barnes retired from the USDA Forest Service's Southeastern Forest Experiment Station;
Ms. Barbour is a germination specialist at the USDA Forest Service's National Tree Laboratory,
Dry Branch, Georgia

Synonym. *Cladrastis lutea* (Michx. f.) K. Koch

Other common names. Kentucky yellowwood, virgilia, American yellowwood.

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. Yellowwood—*Cladrastis kentukea* (Dum.-Cours.) Rudd—is a small deciduous tree that attains a height of 12 to 18 m at maturity (Sargent 1965). The native range of yellowwood is restricted; it extends from western North Carolina into eastern and central Tennessee, northern Alabama, Kentucky, southern Illinois, and Indiana; it also occurs in the glades country of southwestern Missouri and in central and northern Arkansas. Locally, it grows on limestone cliffs in rich soils, and its greatest abundance is in Missouri and in the vicinity of Nashville, Tennessee. The wood is hard, close-grained, and bright yellow, turning to light brown on exposure to light; commercially, it is a substitute for walnut in gunstocks and a source of clear yellow dye. Yellowwood is hardy as far north as New England and is often planted for its ornamental value. It was introduced into cultivation in 1812 (Olson and Barnes 1974).

Flowering and fruiting. The fragrant, perfect, white, showy flowers bloom in June, usually in alternate years, and the fruit ripens in August or September of the same year (Bailey 1949; Radford and others 1964; Sargent 1965). The fruit is a legume (pod), 7.5 to 10 cm long (figure 1) (Fernald 1950), that falls and splits open soon after maturing. The seeds are dispersed by birds and rodents. Each legume contains 4 to 6 short, oblong, compressed seeds with thin, dark brown seedcoats and without endosperm (figure 2). Weights of seeds in legumes containing 2 to 4 seeds decreased from the base of the legume to the style (Harris 1917). Good seedcrops are produced generally in alternate years.

Collection of fruits. The legumes may be collected soon after maturity by handpicking them from trees or by shaking or whipping them onto outspread canvas or plastic sheets. Legumes turn brown and split open easily at maturity.

Extraction and storage of seeds. After the legumes are allowed to dry, they can be opened by beating them in sacks or running them through a macerator. The seeds may be separated from the legume remnants with screens or air separators.

Cleaned seeds average about 24,900 to 32,200/kg (11,300 to 14,600/lb). Average purity and soundness of seeds from commercial sources have been, respectively, 82 and 67% (Olson and Barnes 1974). Seeds of yellowwood are orthodox in storage behavior and may be stored dry in sealed containers at 5 °C (Olson and Barnes 1974). For overwinter storage, seeds may be stratified in sand or a mixture of sand and peat (Olson and Barnes 1974), or they may be dried and sown the following spring (Wyman 1953).

Pregermination treatments. Natural germination of yellowwood is epigeal (figure 3) and takes place in the spring following seedfall. Dormancy is chiefly caused by an impermeable seedcoat and to a lesser degree by conditions in the embryo (Burton 1947). Burton (1947) found that shaking yellowwood seeds for 20 minutes at 400 strokes per minute made 82% of the seed permeable to water. A successful dormancy-breaking treatment is sulfuric acid scarification for 30 to 60 minutes (Heit 1967). Dormancy may be overcome also by stratification in sand or sand and peat for 90 days at 5 °C or by scarification and storage for 30 days (Olson and Barnes 1974).

An early method of overcoming dormancy includes soaking the seeds in water that is nearly at the boiling point (Jenkins 1936). The water should be preheated to 71 to 100 °C at the time the seeds are immersed; the heating element is then removed and the seeds are allowed to soak and cool for 12 to 24 hours in water (Heit 1967).

Germination tests. There are no official test prescriptions for yellowwood. Germination has been tested on pretreated seeds in sand or sand and peat flats in 30 to 42 days at 20 to 30 °C (Olson and Barnes 1974) and on moist filter paper medium for 24 days at 0, 25, and 50 °C (Rivera and others 1937). Acid-treated seeds germinated from 51 to 67% in 11 days; final germination ranged from 56 to 67% (Olson and Barnes 1974). Acid treatment for 0, 30, 60, and 120 minutes produced 5, 41, 92, and 96% germination, respectively (Frett and Dirr 1979).

C

Figure 1—*Cladrastis kentukea*, yellowwood: legumes.

Figure 2—*Cladrastis kentukea*, yellowwood: longitudinal section (**left**) and exterior view of a seed (**right**).

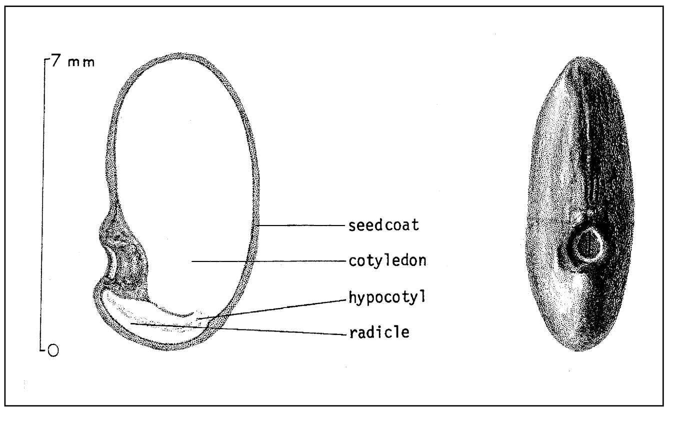
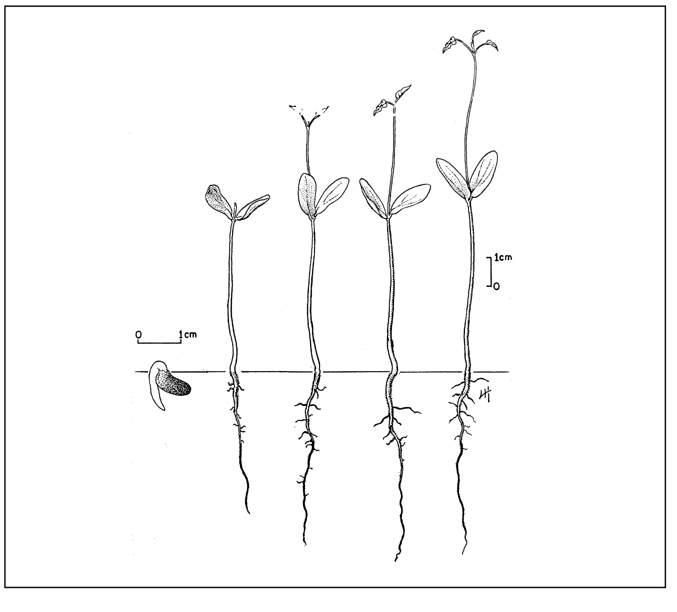


Figure 3—*Cladrastis kentukea*, yellowwood: seedling development at 1, 6, 10, 16, and 20 days after germination.



Applying hydrostatic pressure to yellowwood seeds increased their permeability in the region of the hilum and greatly increased the speed of germination (Rivera and others 1937). Pressures of 68,950 kN/m^2 (10,000 lb/in^2) applied for 10 minutes at 0 °C, 1 minute at 25 °C, and 1 minute at 50 °C resulted in 100% germination within 24 days (Rivera and others 1937). At 206,850 kN/m^2 (30,000 lb/in^2) of pressure for 1 minute or 5 minutes at 25 °C, 100% of the seeds germinated by the 12th day. However, a 20-minute exposure to a pressure of 68,950 kN/m^2 (10,000 lb/in^2) at 50 °C proved injurious to the seeds, with 15.5% of the seeds appearing soft and dead (Rivera and others 1937).

Nursery practice. Seeds may be sown in autumn or spring. Beds should be well prepared and drilled with rows 20 to 30 cm (8 to 12 in) apart, and the seeds covered with about 6 mm ($^1/_4$ in) of firmed soil. Untreated seeds may be sown in autumn and the seedbeds should be mulched and protected with bird or shade screens until after late frosts in spring. Side boards simplify mulching and screening. Stratified seeds or dry-stored seeds that have been treated to break dormancy are used for spring-sowing. If seeds were soaked in hot water at 49 °C for 24 to 36 hours until swollen and then surface-dried and planted in the nursery, they germinated readily in the spring (Dirr and Heuser 1987). Shading of seedlings is unnecessary.

References

Bailey LH. 1949. Manual of cultivated plants most commonly grown in the continental United States and Canada. Rev. ed. New York: Macmillan. 1116 p.

Barton LV. 1947. Special studies on seed coat impermeability. Contributions of the Boyce Thompson Institute 14: 355–362.

Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation from seed to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Fernald ML. 1950. Gray's manual of botany. 8th ed. New York: American Book Co. 1632 p.

Frett JL, Dirr MA. 1979. Scarification and stratification requirements for seeds of *Cercis canadensis* L. (redbud), *Cladrastis lutea* (Michx. f.) K. Koch (yellowwood), and *Gymnocladus dioicus* (L.) K. Koch. (Kentucky coffeetree). Plant Propagator 25(2): 4–6.

Harris JA. 1917. The weight of seeds as related to their number and position. Torreya 17: 180–182.

Heit CE. 1967. Propagation from seed: 6. Hard-seededness—a critical factor. American Nurseryman 125(10): 10–12, 88–96.

Jenkins EM. 1936. Seed practices in nursery. American Nurseryman 63(11): 9–11.

Olson DF Jr, Barnes RL. 1974. *Cladrastis lutea*, yellowwood (Michx. f.) K. Koch. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 329–330.

Radford AE, Ahles HE, Bell CR. 1964. Guide to the vascular flora of the Carolinas. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Book Exchange.

Rivera R, Popp HW, Dow RB. 1937. The effect of high hydrostatic pressure upon seed germination. American Journal of Botany 24: 508–513.

Sargent CS. 1965. Manual of the trees of North America. 2nd ed., corrected and reprinted. New York: Dover. 934 p.

Wyman D. 1953. Seeds of woody plants. Arnoldia 13: 41–60.

C

Ranunculaceae—Buttercup family

Clematis L.

clematis

John C. Zasada and Paul O. Rudolf

Dr. Zasada retired from the USDA Forest Service's North Central Forest Research Station;
Dr. Rudolf (deceased) retired from the USDA Forest Service's North Central Forest Experiment Station

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. The genus *Clematis* includes more than 200 species of climbing vines, and erect or ascending perennial herbs (sometimes woody) widely that are distributed through the temperate regions, chiefly in the Northern Hemisphere (Rehder 1940). *Clematis* is subdivided into 3 sections—Flammula (western and eastern virgin's-bowers), Atragene (western blue clematis and *C. occidentalis* (C.L. Hitchc.) Pringle), and Viorna (traveler's-joy). The taxonomy and distribution of section Atragene are described by Pringle (1971). Many horticultural varieties are grown for ornamental purposes (Dirr 1990; Lloyd 1977; Markham 1935). The 8 species included here (table 1) are also useful for erosion control, ground cover, and wildlife food (Bailey 1939; Dirr 1990; Fernald 1950; Rehder 1940; Van Dersal 1938).

Species occupy different site types within their range. In Wisconsin, for example, eastern virgin's-bower was found in 13 community types but was most abundant in the wet alder thicket community. Rock clematis is present in 2 communities and most abundant in northern dry mesic forests (Curtis 1959). Western species seem to be more common on drier well-drained sites than species native east of the Mississippi (table 1).

Geographic races. Two varieties of western virgin's-bower—*C. ligusticifolia* var. *californica* Wats. and var. *brevifolia* Nutt.—are separated geographically within the species' range (Vines 1960). These and a variety of eastern virgin's-bower—*C. virginiana* var. *missouriensis* (Rydb.) Palmer & Steyrm.—may be geographic races. Wild plants intermediate between Drummond clematis and western virgin's-bower may be of hybrid origin (Vines 1960). Several hybrids of Italian clematis are known (Rehder 1940).

Flowering and fruiting. There are both monoecious and dioecious species. Eastern virgin's-bower and western virgin's-bower (section Flammula) are dioecious, but their female flowers have non-functional stamens. Species in the sections Atragene and Viorna are monoecious (Fernald 1950). Flower size differs significantly among species, for example, eastern virgin's-bower flowers occur in clusters (panicles) containing several flowers, and their sepals are about 0.5 cm in diameter, whereas rock clematis flowers are borne singly, and their sepals are about 4 cm. Fruits are borne in heads of 1-seeded achenes with persistent feathery styles. Achenes (figures 1 and 2) are produced annually (Rudolf 1974) and are dispersed by wind in late summer or fall. Some species have been shown to produce viable seeds the first year after sowing (neoteny) (Beskaravainya 1977).

Table 1—*Clematis*, clematis: nomenclature and occurrence

Scientific name & synonym(s)	Common name(s)	Occurrence
***C. columbiana* (Nutt.) Torr. & Gray** *C. verticillaris* var. *columbiana* (Nutt.) Gray	**rock clematis,** mountain clematis, purple clematis	Quebec to Manitoba, S to New England, West Virginia, Ohio, Wisconsin, &
***C. drummondii* Torr. & Gray**	**Drummond clematis,** Texas virgin's-bower, graybeard	NW Iowa Central & E Texas, Arizona & in Mexico on dry, well-drained soils
***C. flammula* L.** *C. pallasii* J. F. Gmel.	**plume clematis**	Mediterranean region to Iran
***C. ligusticifolia* Nutt.** *C. brevifolia* Howell	**western virgin's-bower,** western clematis, traveler's-joy	British Columbia & North Dakota S to New Mexico & California
***C. pauciflora* Nutt.**	**rope-vine**	California on dry, well-drained sites
***C. virginiana* L.** *C. catesbyana* Pursh	**eastern virgin's-bower,** Virginia virgin's-bower, eastern clematis	Maine to Georgia to Louisiana to Kansas in low woods & along streambanks
***C. vitalba* L.**	**traveler's-joy,** old-man's-beard	S Europe, N Africa, & the Caucasus Mtns.
***C. viticella* L.**	**Italian clematis,** vine-bower	S Europe & W Asia

Dates of flowering and fruiting are listed in table 2. Effects of day length and temperature on flowering and flowerbud development were reported by Goi and others (1975). Other characteristics of 8 common species are presented in table 3.

Collection of fruits and extraction and storage of seeds. Fruits are brown when ripe and may be gathered from the plants by hand, dried, and shaken to remove the seeds from the heads. Other characteristics of ripeness are when the styles have become feathery (figure 1) and the achene appears shrunken and separates easily from the head (Stribling 1986). Large quantities of fruits may be collected by means of a vacuum seed harvester, run dry through a hammermill to break up the heads, and fanned to remove debris (Plummer and others 1968).

Numbers of cleaned seeds per unit weight are listed for 7 species in table 4. Limited data for eastern virgin's-bower, traveler's-joy, and Italian clematis indicate that, in seeds not freed from the styles, purity runs from 90 to 95% and soundness about 85% (Rafn and Son 1928; Rudolf 1974). For hammermilled seeds of western virgin's-bower, a purity of 20% is acceptable in Utah (Plummer and others 1968) because separation of the broken styles from the seed is difficult and expensive. Viability of dry seeds of this species has been maintained for 2 years without refrigeration (Plummer and others 1968).

Germination. Clematis seeds have dormant or immature embryos (Dirr 1990; Dirr and Heuser 1987). Some species and hybrids may germinate over a period of from months to years (Lloyd 1977). Dirr (1990) and Dirr and Heuser (1987) also indicate that requirements for germination vary among the taxa.

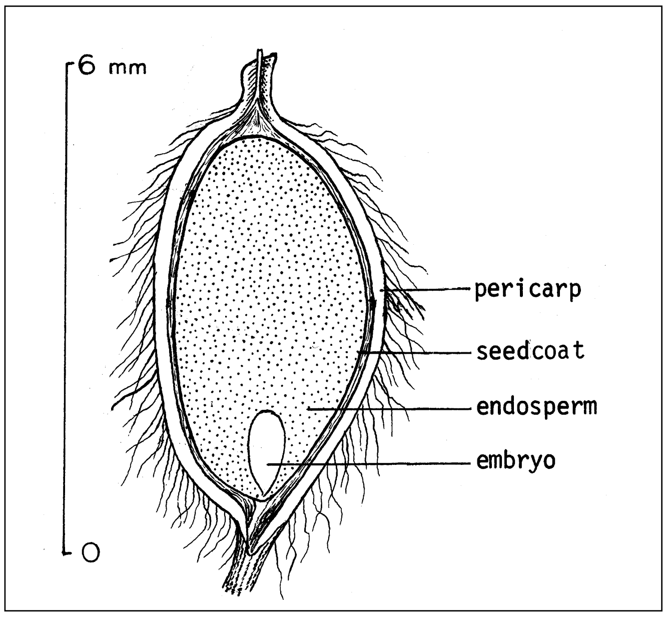
Prechilling at 1 to 5 °C in moist sand, peat, or a mixture of the two for 60 to 180 days has been used to promote germination in some species (Dirr and Heuser 1987; Fordham 1960; Hartmann and others 1990; Heit 1968). Field-sowing responses of traveler's-joy and Italian clematis (Blair 1959) indicate that warm plus cold stratification may be needed. The presence of an immature embryo in Italian clematis suggests that the warm stratification allows the embryo to mature, which allows germination to occur (Clark and others 1989). Germination of seeds of *Clematis microphylla* F. Muell. ex Benth. was improved by removing the pericarp or by exposing them to a cycle of wetting and drying (Lush and others 1984). Germination of seeds of traveler's-joy collected and sown in November was lower and germination rate lower than that of seeds collected and sown in February (Czekalski 1987).

Germination tests can be run on pretreated seed in sand flats or germinators for 40 to 60 days at 20 °C (night) to 30 °C (day) (Rudolf 1974). Test results available for 4 species are shown in table 5.

Nursery practice. Only a few species are propagated from seeds because of unacceptable variation in form and flowering that detracts from their value as ornamentals (Evison 1977; Lloyd 1977). The most appropriate sowing schedule is based on species and winter conditions and will vary with geographic location. General recommendations

Figure 1—*Clematis virginiana*, eastern virgin's-bower: 1 achene with complete style (**upper left**) and 2 achenes with styles removed (**lower right**).

Figure 2—*Clematis virginiana*, eastern virgin's-bower: longitudinal section through an achene.



C

Table 2—*Clematis*, clematis: phenology of flowering and fruiting

Species	Location	Flowering	Fruit ripening
C. columbiana	—	May–June	July–Aug
C. drummondii	SW US	Mar–Sept	Aug–Oct
C. flammula	—	Aug–Oct	Aug–Oct
C. ligusticifolia	California	Mar–Apr	May–Aug
	Texas	Mar–Sept	Aug–Nov
	Colorado & Utah	May–Aug	Oct–Dec
C. pauciflora	California	Mar–Apr	May–July
C. virginiana	—	July–Sept	July–Sept
	Minnesota	June–July	Aug–Sept
C. vitalba	NE US	July–Sept	July–Sept
	France	June–July	Sept–Oct
C. viticella	NE US	June–Aug	June–Aug

Sources: Fernald (1950), Loiseau (1945), McMinn (1951), Mirov and Kraebel (1939), Radford and others (1964), Rehder (1940), Rosendahl (1955), Rydberg (1922), Van Dersal (1938), Vines (1960).

Table 3—*Clematis*, clematis: size, year first cultivated, and flower color

Species	Length at maturity (m)	Year first cultivated	Flower color
C. columbiana	2.8	1797	Purple
C. drummondii	—	—	White
C. flammula	3.1–4.6	1509	White
C. ligusticifolia	0.9–12.3	1880	White
C. pauciflora	—	Before 1935	White
C. virginiana	3.7–6.2	1726	Creamy white
C. vitalba	10.2	Long cultivated	White
C. viticella	4.6	1597	Purplish

Sources: Fernald (1950), McMinn (1951), Rehder (1940), Rosendahl (1955), Vines (1960).

Table 4–*Clematis*, clematis: seed yield data

		Cleaned seeds/weight			
	Place	Range		Average	
Species	collected	/kg	/lb	/kg	/lb
C. columbiana	Minnesota	—	—	141,440	64,000
C. flammula	Europe	—	—	55,250	25,000
C. ligusticifolia	California	—	—	205,530	93,000
	Utah	663,000–724,880*	300,000–328,000*	696,150*	315,000*
C. pauciflora	California	—	—	187,850	85,000
C. virginiana	Baraga Co., Michigan	402,220–446,420	182,000–202,000	424,320	192,000
C. vitalba	Europe	—	—	707,200†	320,000
C. viticella	Europe	48,620-103-870	22,000-47,000	59,670	27,000

Sources: Mirov and Kraebel (1939), Rafn & Son (1928), Rudolf (1974).
* Styles removed.
† Styles presumably removed.

are to sow untreated seeds in the fall soon after collection or to sow in the spring using seeds stratified over winter (Bailey 1939). Untreated fall-sown seeds of traveler's-joy and Italian clematis have germinated the following fall (Blair 1959). Stribling (1986) recommends the following schedule for propagating Armand clematis—*C. armandii* Franch—in central California: store seeds collected in late May in a refrigerator until September; soak in cold water for

C

Table 5—*Clematis*, clematis: germination test results for stratified seeds

Species	Test duration (days)	Germination capacity (%)	# Tests
C. drummondii	40	76	1
C. ligusticifolia	200	11–84	8
C. pauciflora	—	36	1
C. virginiana	60	32	1

Sources: Mirov and Kraebel (1939), Plummer and others (1968), Rudolf (1974),

24 hours and treat with a fungicide; stratify for up to 180 days at 1 to 5 °C in sealed plastic trays; and sow in March or April.

Vegetative propagation is a common practice and used exclusively to propagate most of the popular species and varieties. Procedures for vegetative propagation from cuttings, grafting, and division are discussed by Dirr and Heuser (1987), Evison (1977), Lloyd (1977), and Markham (1935).

References

Bailey LH. 1939. The standard cyclopedia of horticulture. New York: Macmillan. 3639 p.

Beskaravainya MA. 1977. Neoteny in some clematis species [abstract]. Byulleten Gosudarstvennogo Nikitskogo Botanicheskogo Sada 32: 26–29.

Blair FM. 1959. Raising from seed large-flowered clematis. Garden Journal 9(1): 11, 14–15, 29.

Clark WS, Beattie DJ, Arteca RN. 1989. A growth inhibitor in *Clematis viticella* L. seeds. Journal of Plant Physiology 134: 492–495.

Curtis JT. 1959. The vegetation of Wisconsin. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press, 657 pp.

Czekalski M. 1987. Seed germination capacity and seedling morphology in *Clematis vitalba* [abstract]. Prace Komisji Naukowe Rolniczych i Komisji Naukowe Lesnych [published 1991] 63:15–20.

Dirr MA. 1990. Manual of woody landscape plants: their identification, ornamental characteristics, culture, propagation, and uses. Champaign, IL: Stipes Publishing. 1007 p.

Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation: from seed to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Evison RJ. 1977. Propagation of clematis. Proceedings of the International Plant Propagator's Society 27: 436–440.

Fernald ML. 1950. Gray's manual of botany. New York: American Book Co. 1632 p.

Fordham A. 1960. Propagation of woody plants by seed. Arnoldia 20: 33–40.

Goi M, Senda Y, Ihara Y. 1975. Studies on flowering behavior in clematis: 1. The flowering behavior of *Clematis jackii* cv Comtesse de Bouchaud [abstract]. Kagawa Daigaku Nogakuba Gakujutsu Hokoku 26: 94–100.

Hartmann HT, Kester DE, Davies FT Jr. 1990. Plant propagation: principles and practice. 5th ed. Edgewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall. 647 p.

Heit CE. 1968. Thirty-five years' testing of tree and shrub seed. Journal of Forestry 66(8): 632–634.

Lloyd C. 1977. Clematis. London: Collins. 208 p.

Loiseau J. 1945. Les arbres et la forêt. Paris. 204 p.

Lush WM, Kaye PE, Grooves RH. 1984. Germination of *Clematis microphylla* seeds following weathering and other treatments. Australian Journal of Botany 32(2): 121–129.

Markham E. 1935. Clematis. New York: Charles Scribner. 116 p.

Matlack GR. 1987. Diaspore size, shape, and fall behavior in wind-dispersed plant species. American Journal of Botany 74(8): 1175–1160.

McMinn HE. 1951. An illustrated manual of California shrubs. Berkeley: University of California Press. 663 p.

Mirov NT, Kraebel CJ. 1939. Collecting and handling seeds of wild plants. For. Pub. 5. Washington, DC: USDA Civilian Conservation Corps. 42 p.

Plummer AP, Christensen DR, Monsen SB. 1968. Restoring big-game range in Utah. Pub. 68-3. Salt Lake City: Utah Division of Fish and Game. 182 p.

Pringle JS. 1971. Taxonomy and distribution of *Clematis,* sect. Atragene (Rannunculaceae), in North America. Brittonia 23: 361–393.

Radford AE, Ahles HE, Bell CR. 1964. Guide to the vascular flora of the Carolinas. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Book Exchange. 383 p.

Rafn J, & Son. [circa 1928]. Skovfrökontoret's Fröanalyser Gennem 40 Aar, 1887–1927. Copenhagen: Udfört paa Statsfrökontrollen i Köbenhavn. 5 p.

Rehder A. 1940. Manual of cultivated trees and shrubs hardy in North America. New York: Macmillan. 996 p.

Rosendahl CO. 1955. Trees and shrubs of the upper Midwest. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press. 411 p.

Rudolf PO. 1974. *Clematis* L., clematis. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. Coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 331–334.

Rydberg PA. 1922. Flora of the Rocky Mountains and adjacent plains, Colorado, Utah, Wyoming, Montana, Saskatchewan, Alberta, and neighboring parts of Nebraska, South Dakota, and British Columbia. New York: New York Botanical Garden. 1143 p.

Stribling IL. 1986. *Clematis armandii* propagation by seed. Plant Propagation 32(2): 10–11.

Swingle CF. 1939. Seed propagation of trees, shrubs, and forbs for conservation planting. SCS-TP-27. Washington, DC: USDA Soil Conservation Service. 198 p.

Van Dersal WR. 1938. Native woody plants of the United States: their erosion-control and wildlife values. Misc. Publ. 303. Washington, DC: USDA. 362 p.

Vines RA. 1960. Trees, shrubs, and woody vines of the Southwest. Austin: University of Texas Press. 1104 p.

Clethraceae—White alder family

Clethra L.

sweet pepperbush, summersweet

Jason J. Griffin and Frank A. Blazich

Dr. Griffin is assistant professor at Kansas State University's Department of Horticulture, Forestry, and Recreation Resources, Manhattan, Kansas; Dr. Blazich is alumni: distinquished graduate professor of plant propagation and tissue culture at North Carolina State University's Department of Horticultural Science, Raleigh, North Carolina

Growth habit, occurrence, and uses. The genus *Clethra* L. comprises about 30 species native to eastern Asia, eastern North America, and Madeira (Huxley 1992; LHBH 1976). Of those, cinnamon-bark clethra and sweet pepperbush are native to eastern North America, occurring from southern Maine to Florida and west to Texas (LHBH 1976). Some taxonomists consider woolly summersweet to be a separate species in this same range, but others consider it to be a variety of sweet pepperbush (Huxley 1992; Kartesz 1994; Radford and others 1968). Japanese clethra, a native of Japan, is commonly cultivated in North America (Koller 1974). Specific geographic regions of occurrence differ among these species (table 1).

North American species of *Clethra* are deciduous shrubs or small trees with heights ranging from 3 to 10 m in their natural settings (Krüssmann 1984). Species generally grow as rounded, multi-stemmed plants that can be shaped easily into attractive small trees (Bir 1992b).

Valued for fragrant, late summer blooms and exfoliating, cinnamon-colored bark, cinnamon-bark clethra can be useful in the landscape as a specimen plant (Bir 1992b; Koller 1974) or as a hedge (Huxley 1992). Plants also fit nicely into shrub borders and are effective particularly along the edge of water (Dirr 1994). Adaptability to unfavorable environments make summersweets ideal selections for adverse planting sites. The species discussed herein perform well in both full sun and dense shade, while tolerating soil conditions ranging from drought-prone (once established) to saturated (Bir 1992b). Sweet pepperbush also has been cultivated successfully in coastal regions where it tolerates salt mist (but not salt spray), which frequently damages other plants (Bir 1993).

Geographic races and hybrids. Naturally occurring summersweets are quite variable. Although the exfoliating bark of cinnamon-bark clethra is typically cinnamon-red in color, variations of pink, chartreuse, gold, and mahogany

Table 1—*Clethra,* sweet pepperbush: nomenclature and occurrence of species cultivated in North America

Scientific name & synonym(s)	Common name (s)	Occurrence
C. acuminata **Michx.**	**cinnamon-bark clethra,** mountain sweetpepperbush	Cliffs & mountain woods of SE Appalachian Plateau & inner Piedmont
C. alnifolia **L.** *C. alnifolia* var. *paniculata* (Ait.) Rehd. *C. paniculata* Ait. *C. tomentosa* Lam. *C. alnifolia* var. *pubescens* Ait. *C. alnifolia* var. *tomentosa* (Lam.) Michx.	**sweet pepperbush,** summersweet, coastal sweetpepperbush	North American coastal plain, Maine to Texas, with extensions into the Carolina Piedmont; acid swamps & low moist woods
C. barbinervis **Sieb. & Zucc.** *C. canescens* Forbes & Hemsl. *C. kawadana* Yanagita *C. barbinervis* var. *kawadana* (Yanagita) Hara *C. repens* Nakai	**Japanese clethra,** Asiatic sweet pepperbush	Hills & mountains of Japan & Korea
C. tomentosa **Lam.** *C. alnifolia* var. *pubescens* Ait. *C. alnifolia* var. *tomentosa* (Lam.) Michx.	**woolly summersweet**	Swamps & coastal plain of North Carolina to N Florida & Alabama

Sources: Huxley (1992), Ohwi (1984), Sleumer (1967), Small (1933).

have been observed (Bir 1992b). The majority of named selections have originated from sweet pepperbush. Inflorescences of this species normally form erect racemes (LHBH 1976). However, inflorescences occur occasionally as branched panicles (Everett 1981), in which case the plants are often classified as C. *alnifolia* var. *paniculata* (Ait.) Rehd. or *C. paniculata* Ait. (Everett 1981; Huxley 1992; LHBH 1976). Dirr (1994) cited many cultivars in detail. Some of the more outstanding selections include *C. alnifolia* 'Compacta', a compact, 1.0- to 1.2-m-tall selection with lustrous, dark green foliage; 'Creel's Calico', the only variegated selection; 'Fern Valley Late Sweet', a late-flowering, almost columnar selection; and 'Hummingbird', unquestionably the most popular selection, which grows to a height of 0.8 to 1.0 m, with lustrous, dark green foliage that is covered by fragrant white flowers in mid to late summer. Of the pink-flowering forms, 'Pink Spires' and 'Rosea' are most common (Dirr 1994). These cultivars frequently are indistinguishable and may in fact be the same clone. 'Ruby Spice' occurred as a bud sport on 'Rosea' and is distinguished by deeper pink flowers that do not fade in late season. Another pink selection, 'Fern Valley Pink', produces inflorescences that can reach lengths of 20 to 25 cm for a spectacular floral display.

Flowering and fruiting. Fragrant white flowers, about 1 cm in diameter, are borne on upright or horizontally held terminal racemes or panicles, to 15 cm long (Huxley 1992), arising from the axils of leaves (Everett 1981). Flowering begins in July (with the exception of woolly summersweet, which flowers in August) and lasts to September (Krüssmann 1984), making summersweets excellent selections for late summer color. Pollination of perfect flowers most likely occurs by bees, which can be a nuisance if plants are located near walks or sitting areas (Bir 1992b; Dirr 1994; Koller 1974). Fruits are subglobose, 3-valved capsules, ranging from 2.5 to 5.0 mm in length with a persisting style and calyx (figure 1) (Huxley 1992). Upon maturation, capsules split to release many seeds. Seeds are quite small and irregularly angled, and dispersal is presumably by wind (figures 2 and 3) (Sleumer 1967). Sweet pepperbush in New Jersey averaged 6 to 17 seeds per capsule from 3 collection sites, with total seed production per plant ranging from 1,348 to 7,920 (Jordan and Hartman 1995).

Collection of fruits, seed extraction, cleaning, and storage. It appears that seeds do not mature until long after leaf abscission, November in North Carolina (Bir 1992a). Thus, collecting and sowing seeds before maturation may result in poor or no germination. Once seeds have matured, capsules can be collected before they open and

Figure 1—*Clethra*, sweet pepperbush: fruits (capsules) of *C. acuminata*, cinnamon-bark clethra (**top**); *C. alnifolia*, sweet pepperbush (**bottom**).

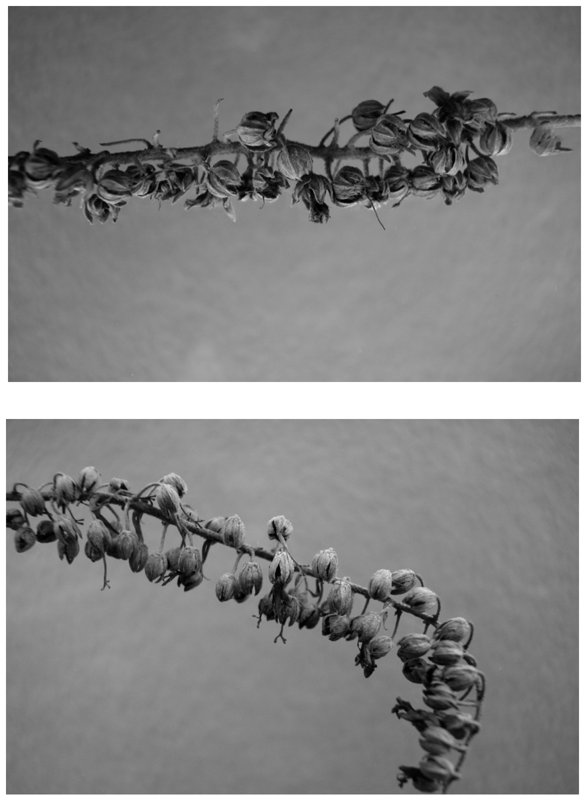
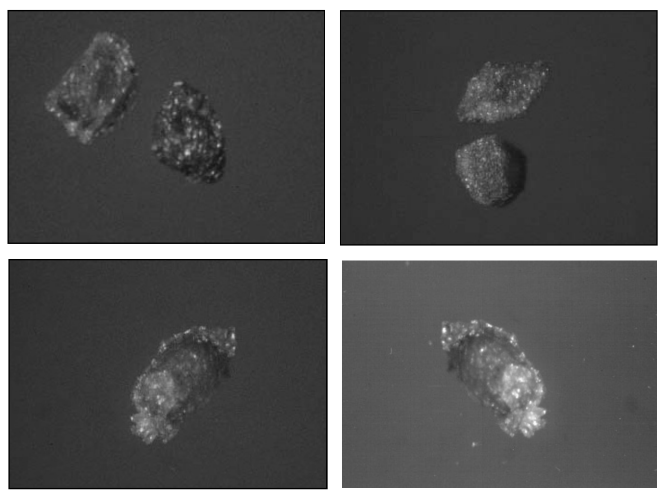


Figure 2—*Clethra*, sweet pepperbush: seeds of *C. acuminata*, cinnamon-bark clethra (**top left**); *C. alnifolia*, sweet pepperbush (**top right**); *C. barbinervis*, Japanese clethra (**bottom left**); and *C. tomentosa*, woolly summersweet (**bottom right**).



allowed to dry until they split. Seeds can then be shaken from the capsules and cleaned (Dirr 1994; Dirr and Heuser 1987). There are no reports of long-term storage, but seeds can be stored successfully for short periods at low temperatures (5 °C) and moisture contents (Bir 1992a; Dirr and Heuser 1987). The seeds are therefore apparently orthodox in storage behavior.

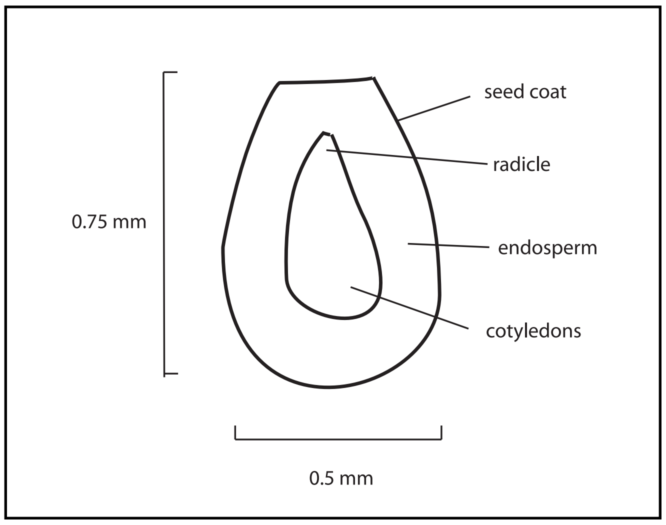
Pregermination treatments and germination testing. Jordan and Hartman (1995) reported up to 58% germination with New Jersey sources of sweet pepperbush after 5 months of stratification at 0 to 2 °C in the dark. Their germination regime was 16 hours of light at 30 °C and 8 hours in the dark at 15 °C. Other reports, however, suggest that no pretreatments are required and that germination occurs readily if seeds are sown immediately following collection (Bir 1992a; Dirr and Heuser 1987).

For successful germination seeds should be treated similar to those of azalea (*Rhododendron* L.) (Bir 1992a&b; Dirr and Heuser 1987). In general, when mature seeds are sown on the surface of a germinating medium and placed under mist at 24 °C, germination occurs within 2 weeks and is complete within 1 month (Bir 1992b).

Nursery practice. When seedlings are grown in a typical azalea growing medium of 3 parts pine bark to 1 part peat (vol/vol)—amended with 4.2 kg/m^3 (7.0 lb/yd^3) dolomitic limestone and fertilized following recommendations for azaleas—seedlings grow well, filling a 3.8-liter (1-gal) pot by the end of a growing season (Bir 1992b). Although naturally occurring as an understory species, seedlings of cinnamon-bark clethra show no symptoms of stress when grown in full sun and are visually no different than seedlings maintained under 50% shade (Bir 1992b). The species is well adapted to dry soils once established. However, if seedlings are exposed to drought conditions before a sufficient root system has developed, high mortality can be expected (Bir 1992b).

Asexual propagation of species of summer-sweet is very easy and is widely used for propagation of particular cultivars. Species listed in table 1 are propagated readily by stem cuttings taken during the summer, as well as by root cuttings taken during December and January (Dirr and Heuser 1987).

Figure 3—*Clethra alnifolia*, sweet pepperbush: longitudinal section of a seed.



References

Bir RE. 1992a. Growing and propagating showy native woody plants. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press. 192 p.

Bir RE. 1992b. Native spice. American Nurseryman 175(3): 51–52, 54–59.

Bir RE. 1993. *Clethra*. Fine Gardening 43(30): 52–54.

Dirr MA. 1994. Confessions of a *Clethra*-phile. Nursery Manager 10(11): 14–21.

Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation: from seed to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Everett TH, ed. 1981. The New York Botanical Garden illustrated encyclopedia of horticulture. Volume 3. New York: Garland Publishing: 705–1058.

Huxley A, ed. 1992. The new Royal Horticultural Society dictionary of gardening. Volume 1. New York: Stockton Press. 815 p.

Jordan RA, Hartman JM. 1995. Safe sites and the regeneration of *Clethra alnifolia* L. (Clethraceae) in wetland forests of central New Jersey. American Midland Naturalist 133: 112–123.

Kartesz JT. 1994. A synonymized checklist of the vascular flora of the United States, Canada, and Greenland. 2nd ed. Volume 1. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 622 p.

Koller G. 1974. Shrub profiles: *Clethra barbinervis*. Morris Arboretum Bulletin 25(1): 23.

Krüssmann G. 1984. Manual of cultivated broad-leaved trees & shrubs. Volume 1. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 624 p.

LHBH [Liberty Hyde Bailey Hortorium]. 1976. Hortus third: a concise dictionary of plants cultivated in the United States and Canada. 3rd ed. New York: Macmillan Publishing Co. 1290 p.

Ohwi J. 1984. Flora of Japan. Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution. 1067 p.

Radford AE, Ahles HE, Bell CR. 1968. Manual of the vascular flora of the Carolinas. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press. 1183 p.

Sleumer H. 1967. Monographia Clethracearum. Botanische Jahrbücher für Systematik, Pflanzengeschichte und Pflanzengeographie 87(1): 36–116.

Small JK. 1933. Manual of the southeastern flora. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press. 1554 p

C

Rosaceae—Rose family

Coleogyne ramosissima Torr.

blackbrush

Burton K. Pendleton

Dr. Pendleton is a research plant ecologist at the USDA Forest Service's Rocky Mountain Research Station, Forestry Sciences Laboratory, Albuquerque, New Mexico

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. Blackbrush—*Coleogyne ramosissima* Torr.—grows in the transition zone between warm and cold deserts of southern California, southern Nevada, southern Utah, northern Arizona, and southwestern Colorado. It is found at elevations of 760 to 1,980 m. Ranging from 0.3 to 1.2 m in height, blackbrush forms almost monotypic stands in the lower Mojave–Great Basin ecotone, bounded by creosote bush (*Larrea tridentata* (Sesse & Moc.) ex DC. Coville.) communities at low elevations and by juniper–big sagebrush (*Artemesia tridentata* Nutt.) communities at higher elevations. In the eastern part of its range, blackbrush is bordered by Sonoran communities on the south and by big sagebrush, juniper, and mixed shrub communities of the Colorado Plateau in the north. Distribution of blackbrush is limited by soil depth, temperature extremes, and moisture availability.

Blackbrush occurs as a landscape dominant over much of its range and forms a major vegetational component of national and state parks in Utah, Nevada, and California. Blackbrush provides significant year-round forage for desert bighorn sheep (*Ovis canadensis*) and is eaten by mule deer (*Odocoileus hemionus*) in winter. Foliage may be grazed by domestic goats and sheep in spring, but receives minimal use by cattle. Blackbrush provides habitat to many small mammals, and its seeds are eaten by both rodents and birds.

Blackbrush, although a monotypic genus, occurs over a wide geographic and elevational range. Differences in plant size and germination characteristics suggest ecotypic variability. Use of locally adapted seed collection sites should improve chances for successful propagation and establishment.

Flowering and fruiting. Flowers are perfect, apetalous, with yellow sepals 4.5 to 6.5 mm in length; however, rare individuals with 1 to 4 yellow petals can be found in most populations (Welsh and others 1987). Flowering occurs from late March through early May, each population flowering for 2 to 3 weeks (Bowns and West 1976), with individual plants lasting some 7 to 10 days. Flowering is induced by fall and winter rains, and the timing and degree of flowering varies significantly from year to year (Beatley 1974). Ripe achenes are reddish brown in color (figure 1). The fruit is an ovate glabrous achene, somewhat curved in shape, and 4 to 8 mm long (figure 2). Blackbrush is wind-pollinated (Pendleton and Pendleton 1998).

Blackbrush is mast-fruiting: the size of the seedcrop is related to plant resource reserves. The mast crop comprises almost all of the seed production at low-elevation sites, whereas some seeds are produced in the more mesic higher-elevation sites in all but the driest intermast years. Periods between mast seedcrops often exceed 5 years. Late frosts can reduce or eliminate flowering and fruit production.

Seed collection, cleaning, and storage. The ripe seeds readily separate from the floral cup. Natural seed-fall is correlated with rain showers, which dislodge the achenes from the floral cup. The fruit ripens between late May and the third week of July, depending upon elevation and year-to-year variation. Harvesting is accomplished by beating the branches with a stick or board. Fruits can be collected onto a tarp spread under the shrub or into a basket or hopper (Nord

Figure 1—*Coleogyne ramosissima*, blackbrush: fruits with and without pubescence.

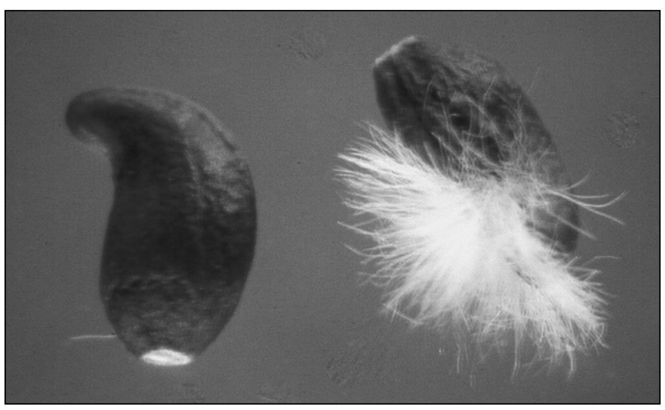
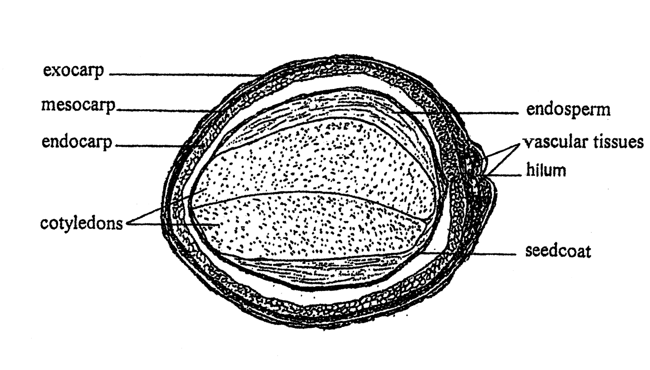


Figure 2—*Coleogyne ramosissima*, blackbrush: longitudinal section of achene with seed (drawing courtesy of Dr. Emerencia Hurd, retired, USDA Forest Service, Boise, ID).



1962). Seed collections contain a significant amount of debris and cleaning is required. Seeds can be cleaned in a fanning mill or with a gravity separator (Monsen 2004). A portion of the achenes are retained within the floral cup. These can be removed with a barley de-bearder or through use of a rubbing board.

Viability of cleaned seeds is generally high, and the incidence of insect damage is extremely low. Twenty-four collections from Utah and Nevada populations ranged in viability from 74 to 98%. Nineteen collections had viability percentages greater than 85%. The number of cleaned seeds per weight averages 60,000/kg (27,000/lb), with a range of 47,500 to 68,000/kg (21,500 to 31,000/lb).

Seeds of blackbrush are long-lived and orthodox in storage behavior; they can be stored in a cool dry location for long periods without loss of viability (table 1). Germination tests on seeds collected in Washington County, Utah, showed no loss in viability after 10 and 15 years. Plants were produced from this seedlot 12 years after collection. However, the vigor of older seeds (10+ years) in field plantings has not been determined.

Germination. Fresh blackbrush seedlots are 68 to 95% dormant and remain dormant in laboratory storage for the first year after collection (table 1). Seed dormancy increases with increasing elevation of the seed source. Five-year-old seeds are essentially nondormant and will readily germinate at cool temperatures (–15 °C) (Pendleton and others 1995). Stratification of fresh seeds for 4 to 6 weeks at 1 °C will produce rapid maximum germination of all collections when seeds are removed from chill and placed at temperatures between 5 and 25 °C. Under field conditions, seeds are nondormant by October, and germination can occur at this time given proper moisture conditions and cool soil temperatures. Field germination typically occurs during the winter and early spring (figure 3) (Meyer and Pendleton 2002).

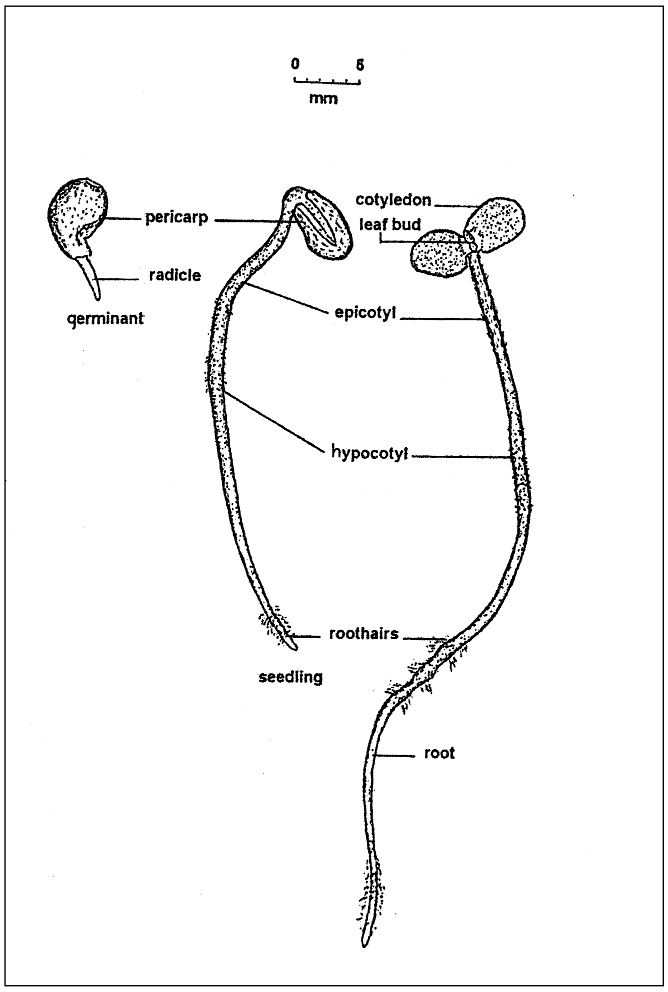
Nursery and field practice. Container stock can readily be produced from seeds. However, both stratified and unstratified seeds will germinate and emerge over a long period of time (up to 1 year). The most efficient method to synchronize germination and produce uniform-aged plants is to plant germinated seeds. Fresh seeds should be stratified between moist blotter paper for 6 weeks at 1 °C. When seedlots are removed from 1 °C and kept at room temperature, more than 75% will germinate in 24 to 48 hours. Seed collections 3 years old or older, stratified for 3 to 4 weeks, produce similar results. Germinated seeds, with radicals 2 to 10 mm (0.1 to 0.4 in) long, should be planted about 2 cm (0.8 in) deep in a well-draining soil mix. However, using a soil medium that retains moisture often leads to problems with damping-off diseases. Under experimental greenhouse conditions, blackbrush responds positively to inoculation with arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (Pendleton and Warren

Table 1—*Coleogyne,* blackbrush: germination of nonstratified and stratified* seeds

Seed age	Percent germination† Range	Percent germination† Mean	Collections
Fresh			
Stratified	5–32	17.6	10
Nonstratified	84–98	91.8	10
1 year			
Stratified	0–13	6.5	10
Nonstratified	85–95	92.0	10
5 years			
Nonstratified	82–96	90	6

Source: Pendleton and Meyer (2002).
* Stratification was a moist chilling for 4 weeks at 1 °C.
† Germination tests done on wet blotter paper with a 12-hour alternating temperature regime of 5 and 15 °C; mean percent viability of these collections > 90%.

Figure 3—*Coleogyne ramosissima*, blackbrush: germination and seedling development (courtesy of Dr. Emerencia Hurd, retired, USDA Forest Service, Boise, ID).



1996). Addition of mycorrhizal inoculum to the planting medium should be considered. Optimal growing temperature for seedling growth is about 20 °C (Wallace and others 1970; Wallace and Romney 1972). Warmer conditions result in slow growth and plants that enter dormancy. Greenhouse-grown plants are susceptible to aphid infestation, but blackbrush is tolerant of standard control methods.

When seeds are not available, plants can be produced from stem cuttings. About half of the cuttings taken from current-year growth (June or September) and treated with 0.8% indole butyric acid (IBA) or commercial rooting hormone produced roots (Hughes and Weglinski 1991).

Outplanted container stock, whether produced from seeds or cuttings, should be protected from herbivory by tree tubes or diamond netting. Container stock has successfully been outplanted at Joshua Tree National Monument in California (Holden 1994) and on a natural-gas pipeline right-of-way in Arches National Park in Utah.

A limited number of attempts to establish blackbrush through seeding have been reported. In general, these attempts have had poor success (Monsen 2004). Factors that may have been responsible include low moisture levels during the germination season, lack of sufficient seeds, seeding at a less than optimal time, weed competition, herbivory, and seed theft by rodents. Seed availability is a major limiting factor in blackbrush reestablishment. Mast crops of seeds occur infrequently (5- to 10-year periods) and should be collected and stored for future use. Blackbrush seeds maintain good viability when stored for these time periods.

Insufficient work has been done to firmly determine the seeding rates and seedbed conditions necessary to establish blackbrush stands from seeds, but experimental work and reported successful seedings do offer some guidelines. Rodent-cached seeds are found at depths of 1 to 3 cm (0.4 to 1.2 in), suggesting that conventional seeders should be set to this planting depth. Because blackbrush does exhibit ecotypic variation, locally collected seeds should be used. Seeding should be done in the late summer or fall. Germination and emergence occurs as early as November (Graham 1991) and, more typically, January to March (Bowns and West 1976; Meyer and Pendleton 2002).

Spring seedings have also been attempted. Blackbrush was included in seed mixes used in experimental restoration plantings at the Nevada Test Site in southern Nevada. The seedings were conducted during March 1993. Although no blackbrush seedlings emerged that spring, some seedlings were observed during subsequent springs (USDoE 1994). An experimental spring-seeding conducted in southeastern Utah in March 1992 included stratified and unstratified seeds from 4 populations. Of the stratified seedlots, 12.5% emerged during spring 1992; of the unstratified seedlots, <1%. During spring 1993, an additional 16% of the stratified and 62% of the unstratified seedlots emerged. Lots of stratified seeds produced half as many seedlings as unstratified seeds from March 1992 through May 1993 (Pendleton and Meyer 2002). Blackbrush will form a short-term seedbank during drought conditions, but most, if not all, seeds will germinate when moisture is adequate for winter germination.

As with all dryland and desert species, successful establishment from seeds depends on the availability of moisture during the germination and establishment periods. Spring and early summer precipitation is not the norm for Mojave and Sonoran blackbrush communities, a fact that makes blackbrush seeding establishment in these areas difficult, especially in lower-elevation sites.

C

References

Beatley JC. 1974. Phenological events and their environmental triggers in Mojave desert ecosystems. Ecology 55: 856–863.

Bowns JE, West NE. 1976. Blackbrush (*Coleogyne ramosissima* Torr.) on southwestern Utah rangelands. Res. Rep. 27. Logan: Utah Agricultural Experiment Station.

Graham T. 1991. Unpublished data. Moab, UT: USDI Geological Survey, Forest and Range Ecosystem Science Center.

Holden MK. 1994. Mojave plant information. Newsletter of the Mojave Native Growers Association (Summer): 2–5.

Hughes H, Weglinski E. 1991. Blackbrush, *Coleogyne ramosissima*, propagation and revegetation of disturbed sites. In: Plumb GE, ed. 15th annual report, University of Wyoming, National Park Service Research Center: 67–74.

Meyer SE, Pendleton BK. 2002. Regeneration biology of blackbrush (*Coleogyne ramosissima*: Rosaceae): 2. Field germination and establishment experiments [in review].

Monsen SB. 2004. *Coleogyne ramosissima.* In: Monsen SB, Stevens R, eds. Restoring western ranges and wildlands. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-136. Shaw NL. Fort Collins, CO: USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station.

Nord EC. 1962. Bitterbrush seed harvesting: when, where, and how. Journal of Range Management 16: 258–260.

Pendleton BK, Meyer SE. 2002. Unpublished data. Provo, UT: USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station.

Pendleton BK, Meyer SE. 2002. Regeneration biology of blackbrush (*Coleogyne ramosissima*: Rosaceae): 1. Habitat-correlated variation in seed germination responses [in review].

Pendleton BK, Meyer SE, Pendleton RL. 1995. Blackbrush biology: insights after three years of a long-term study. In: Roundy BA, McArthur ED, Haley JS, Mann DK, comps. Proceedings, Wildland Shrub and Arid Land Restoration Symposium. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-315. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station: 223–227.

Pendleton BK, Pendleton RL. 1998. Pollination biology of *Coleogyne ramosissima* (Rosaceae). Southwestern Naturalist 43: 376–380.

Pendleton RL, Warren SD. 1996. The effects of cryptobiotic soil crusts and VA mycorrhizal inoculation on growth and nutrient content of five rangeland plant species. In: West NE, ed. Rangelands in a Sustainable Biosphere: Proceedings, 5th International Rangeland Congress. Denver: Society for Range Management: 436–437.

USDoE [United States Department of Energy]. 1994. Unpublished data. Las Vegas, NV.

Wallace A, Romney EM. 1972. Radioecology and ecophysiology of desert plants at the Nevada test site. Oak Ridge, TN: US Atomic Energy Commission, Technical Information Service.

Wallace A, Romney EM, Ashcroft RT. 1970. Soil temperature effects on growth of seedlings of some shrub species which grow in the transitional area between the Mojave and Great Basin deserts. BioScience 20: 1158–1159.

Welsh SK, Atwood ND, Goodrich S, Higgins LC, eds. 1993. A Utah flora. 2nd ed. Great Basin Naturalist Memoirs 9. Provo, UT: Brigham Young University. 986 p.

C

Fabaceae—Pea family

Colutea L.

bladder-senna

Paula M. Pijut

Dr. Pijut is a research plant physiologist at the USDA Forest Service, North Central Research Station's Hardwood Tree Improvement and Regeneration Center, West Lafayette, Indiana

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. The genus *Colutea*—the bladder-sennas—includes about 26 species of deciduous shrubs or small trees, with a distribution ranging from the Mediterranean region and southeastern Europe to northwest Africa and the western Himalayas (Browicz 1963, 1967; Hillier 1991; Krüssmann 1984; LHBH 1976). The 3 taxa of interest in the United States are common bladder-senna (*C. arborescens* L.), *C. orientalis* Mill., and *C.* × *media* Willd. (table 1). Bladder-senna species are cultivated in temperate climates primarily for ornamental purposes but may also be used for erosion control (Krüssmann 1984). In Spain, the potential use of common bladder-senna as a forage crop has been investigated because of its ligneous nature and summer utility (Allue Andrade 1983a). Antifungal compounds have been isolated from root bark of common bladder-senna (Grosvenor and Gray 1998). The bladder-sennas are very distinct shrubs, and the common name is derived from their large, inflated legumes (pods).

Common bladder-senna is a vigorous shrub of bushy habit, with medium to fast growth. It prefers a sunny location (Dirr 1990) but is easily grown in almost any soil type (except waterlogged). The cultivar 'Bullata' is a dwarf form with dense habit (about $^1/_3$ to $^1/_2$ the size of the species at maturity) whose 5 to 7 leaflets are small, rounded, and somewhat bullate (Dirr 1990; Krüssmann 1984). The cultivar 'Crisp' is a low-growing form with leaflets that are sinuate (Dirr 1990; Krüssmann 1984). *Colutea orientalis* is a rounded shrub with attractive glaucous leaflets (Hillier 1991; Krüssmann 1984). *Colutea* × *media* is a recognized as a hybrid (*C. arborescens* × *C. orientalis*), with bluish green foliage, that originated before 1790 (Dirr 1990; Krüssmann 1984).

Flowering and fruiting. The papillionaceous flowers are about 2 cm in length, bloom from May to July (with scattered blossoms into September), and occur in axillary, long-stalked racemes (Dirr 1990; Krüssmann 1984; LHBH 1976). The pea-shaped flowers of common bladder-senna are yellow, the standard petal having red markings; the flowers of *C. orientalis* are a reddish brown or copper color; and those of *C. media* range in color from the typical yellow to those which blend through markings or tints of copper, pink, or reddish brown (Krüssmann 1984; LHBH 1976). The fruit is a inflated, bladder-like legume, 6 to 7.6 cm long and 2.5 to 3.8 cm wide, that varies in color from lime green to tints of pink or bronze and is very ornamental (Dirr 1990; Krüssmann 1984). Fruits mature from July to September (Dirr 1990) and each legume contains several small seeds (figure 1) (Rudolf 1974). The legumes of *C. orientalis* dehisce at the tip.

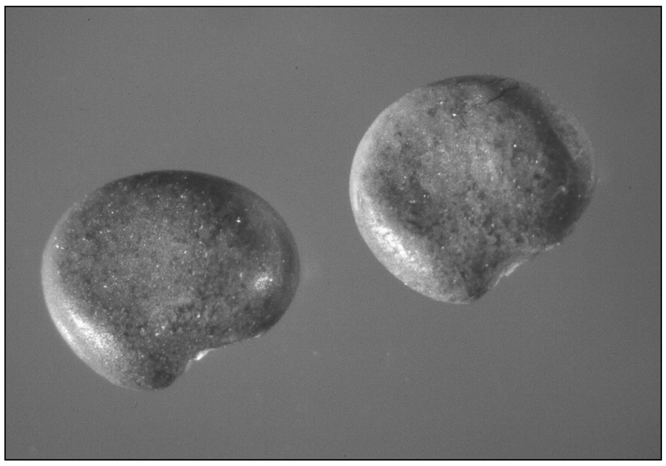
Collection of fruits; extraction, cleaning, and storage of seeds. Ripe legumes can be harvested from the shrubs in late summer or fall and then spread in a shed (with good air circulation) to dry (Rudolf 1974). The legumes are threshed to remove the seeds and the debris is fanned out (Rudolf 1974). Bladder-sennas average 74,956 seeds/kg (34,000/lb) (Allen 1995). Dry seeds stored at 5 °C in glass

Table 1—*Colutea*, bladder-senna: morphological characteristics, height at maturity, and date first cultivated

Scientific name	Leaflets	Flowers/ raceme	Height at maturity (m)	Year first cultivated
C. arborescens	9–13	6–8	1.8–4.5	1570
C. orientalis	7–11	2–5	2	1710
C. x media	11–13	Varies	1.8–3.0	1809

Sources: Dirr (1990), Hiller (1991), Krüssmann (1984), LHBH (1976).

Figure 1—*Colutea* arborescens, common bladder-senna: seeds.



containers will be viable for 1 to 3 years, depending upon the species. Like most genera in Fabaceae, this genus is orthodox in storage behavior. Seeds can be stored in liquid nitrogen without a significant loss in germination percentage (Gonzalez-Benito and others 1994; Iriondo and others 1992).

Pregermination treatments. Bladder-senna seeds do not germinate readily unless the impermeable seedcoat is ruptured by mechanical or chemical scarification. Soaking the seeds in concentrated sulfuric acid for 30 to 60 minutes, before sowing in nursery beds, results in good germination (Dirr 1990; Dirr and Heuser 1987). Steeping seeds in water that was initially brought to 88 °C and then allowed to cool 24 hours also results in good seed germination (Allue Andrade 1983b; Dirr 1990; Dirr and Heuser 1987).

Germination tests. Pretreated bladder-senna seeds can be tested in germinators at 20 °C night and 30 °C day for 30 days (Rudolf 1974).

Nursery practice and seedling care. Untreated seeds may be sown in the fall, but scarified seeds are required for spring-sowing (Allen 1995; Dirr and Heuser 1987). Seedlings germinate within 1 to 2 weeks and grow rapidly. Bladder-senna species may also be propagated by cuttings. In England, 29% of half-ripened cuttings taken in early November rooted without treatment; the cuttings failed to respond to naphthaleneacetic acid (NAA); and 73% rooted after treatment with 0.1 g/liter (100 ppm) indole-3-butyric acid (IBA) solution for 18 hours (Dirr 1990; Dirr and Hesuer 1987). Summer softwood cuttings should be treated with about 1 to 3 g/liter IBA solution (1,000 to 3,000 ppm) or talc formulation (Dirr and Heuser 1987). Bladder-senna plants develop a thin, rangy root system that makes transplanting difficult. Growing plants in containers is the preferred production method.

References

Allen DH. 1995. Personal communication. Sandwich, MA: F.W. Schumacher Co.

Allue Andrade JL. 1983a. Aspectos ecologicos, fenologicos y biometricos de *Colutea arborescens* L. [in Spanish, with English summary: Ecological, phenological, and biometric aspects of *Colutea arborescens* L.]. Anales del Instituto Nacional de Investigaciones Agrarias Seria Forestal 7: 111–127.

Allue Andrade JL. 1983b. Morfoligia, clases, atributos, dificultades y tratamientos en la produccion y germinacion de las semillas de *Colutea arborescens* L. [in Spanish, English summary: Morphology, types, attributes, difficulties and treatments in production and germination of seeds of *Colutea arborescens* L.]. Anales del Instituto Nacional de Investigaciones Agrarias Seria Forestal 7: 129–154

Browicz K. 1963. The genus *Colutea* L.: a monograph. Monographiae Botanicae 14: 1–136.

Browicz K. 1967. A supplement to the mongraph of the genus *Colutea* L. Arboretum Kornickie 12: 33–43.

Dirr MA. 1990. Manual of woody landscape plants: their identification, ornamental characteristics, culture, propagation, and uses. Champaign, IL: Stipes Publishing Company. 1007 p.

Dirr MA, Heuser CW. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation: from seed to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Gonzalez-Benito ME, Caze-Filho J, Perez C. 1994. Cryopreservation of seeds of several legume species. Plant Varieties and Seeds 7: 23–27.

Grosvenor PW, Gray DO. 1998. Coluteol and colutequinone B, more antifungal isolavonoids from *Colutea arborescens*. Journal of Natural Products 61(1): 99–101.

Hillier Nurseries (Winchester) Ltd. 1991. The Hillier manual of trees and shrubs. Melksham, Wiltshire, UK: Redwood Press. 704 p.

Iriondo JM, Perez C, Perez-Garcia F. 1992. Effect of seed storage in liquid nitrogen on germination of several crop and wild species. Seed Science and Technology 20: 165–171.

Krüssmann G. 1984. Manual of cultivated broad-leaved trees and shrubs. Volume 1, A–D. Beaverton, OR: Timber Press. 448 p.

LHBH [Liberty Hyde Bailey Hortorium]. 1976. Hortus third: a concise dictionary of plants cultivated in the United States and Canada. New York: Macmillan. 1290 p.

Rudolf PO. 1974. *Colutea arborescens* L., bladder-senna. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 335.

Cornaceae—Dogwood family

Cornus L.

dogwood

Kenneth A. Brinkman and Victor Vankus

Dr. Brinkman retired from the USDA Forest Service's North Central Experiment Station;
Mr. Vankus is a botanist at the USDA Forest Service's, National Seed Laboratory, Dry Branch, Georgia

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. About 40 species of dogwood—*Cornus* L.—are native to the temperate regions of the Northern Hemisphere, and 1 is found in Peru. Most species are deciduous trees or shrubs (2 are herbs) useful chiefly for their ornamental qualities—flowers, fruit, foliage, or color of twigs. Many varieties have been developed for a number of the species for their landscape or horticultural value. The wood of flowering dogwood, the most commercially important species in the United States, is hard and heavy and was used extensively by the textile industry earlier in the 20th century for shuttle blocks. Today the species is widely known due to its popular use as an ornamental landscape tree. Some species produce edible fruits (Edminster 1950; Edminster and May 1951), and the bark of others contains a substitute for quinine. Roots and bark of several species have long been known to have medicinal properties that can be used to fight fevers. Distribution data and chief uses of 17 species of present or potential importance in the United States are listed in table 1.

Flowering and fruiting. The small, perfect flowers—white, greenish white, or yellow in color—are borne in terminal clusters in the spring. In flowering and Pacific dogwoods, the clusters are surrounded by a conspicuous enlarged involucre of 4 to 6 white or pinkish petal-like, enlarged bracts. Fruits are globular or ovoid drupes 3 to 6 mm in diameter, with a thin succulent or mealy flesh containing a single 2-celled and a 2-seeded bony stone (figures 1 and 2). However, in many stones, only 1 seed is fully developed, but larger stones generally have 2 developed seeds. The fruits ripen in the late summer or fall (table 2). Data on minimum seed-bearing age and fruiting frequency are limited (table 3). Stones are dispersed largely by birds and animals.

Collection of fruits. Dogwood fruits should be collected when the fruit can be squeezed and the stone will pop out. To reduce losses to birds, fruits should be collected as soon as they are ripe by stripping or shaking them from the branches. Short ladders may be useful for collecting fruits from the taller species, but ordinarily this can be done from the ground. Fruits of flowering dogwood should not be collected from isolated trees because these seem to be self-ster-

Figure 1—*Cornus*, dogwood: cleaned seeds of *C. alternifolia,* alternate-leaf dogwood (**top left**); *C. amomum*, silky dogwood (**top center**); *C. sericea* ssp. *orientalis*, California dogwood (**top right**); *C. drummondii*, roughleaf dogwood (**middle left**); *C. florida*, flowering dogwood (**middle center**); *C. nuttallii*, Pacific dogwood (**middle right**); and *C. racemosa*, gray dogwood **(bottom)**.

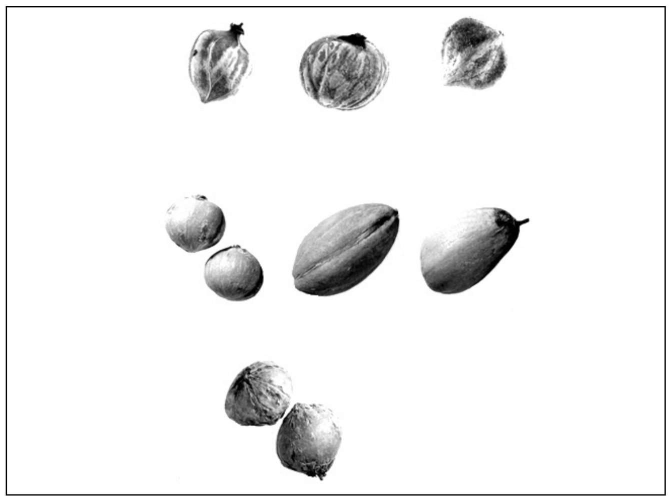
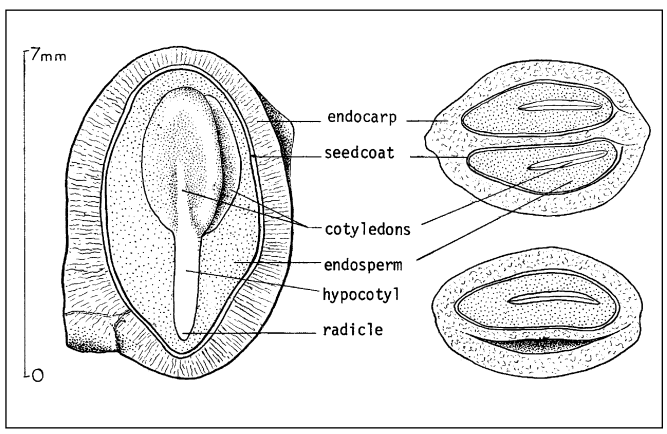


Figure 2—*Cornus sericea*, red-osier dogwood: longitudinal section through an embryo of a stone **(left)**; transverse section of a stone containing 2 embryos (**right top**) and transverse section of a stone containing 1 embryo (**right bottom**).



C

Table 1—*Cornus*, dogwood: nomenclature and occurrence

Scientific name & synonym(s)	Common name(s)	Occurrence
***C. alba* L.** *C. tatarica Mill.*	**Tatarian dogwood**	Siberia to Manchuria & North Korea
***C. alternifolia* L. f.** *Swida alternifolia* (L.f.) Small	**alternate-leaf dogwood,** blue dogwood, pagoda dogwood	Newfoundland to SE Manitoba, S to Missouri & E Arkansas, E to Georgia
C. amomum P. Mill.	**silky dogwood,** kinnikinnik, red-willow	Maine to Indiana, S to Georgia & Florida
***C. canadensis* L.** *Chamaepericlymenum canadense*(L.) Aschers & Graebn. *Cornella canadensis* (L.) Rydb.	**bunchberry,** bunchberry dogwood, dwarf cornel	S Greenland to Alaska, S to Maryland, W to South Dakota, New Mexico, & California
***C. controversa* Hems.**	**giant dogwood**	Japan, China, & Nepal
***C. drummondii* C.A. Mey.** *C. priceae Small*	**roughleaf dogwood**	S Ontario, Ohio, & Kentucky, W to Nebraska, S to Texas & Mississippi
***C. florida* L.** *Cynoxylon floridum* (L) Raf. ex. B.D. Jackson	**flowering dogwood,** dogwood	E United States
***C. kousa* Hance**	**Japanese dogwood,** kousa dogwood	Japan & Korea
***C. macrophylla* Wall.**	**bigleaf dogwood**	Japan, China, & Nepal
***C. mas* L.**	**cornelian-cherry,** cornelian-cherry dogwood	Central & S Europe & W Asia
***C. nuttallii* Audubon ex Torr. & Gray**	**Pacific dogwood,** western flowering dogwood, mountain dogwood	SW British Columbia, W Washington & Oregon, S in mtns to S California; also in central W Idaho
***C. officinalis* Siebold & Zucc.**	**Japanese cornelian-cherry,** Japanese cornel dogwood	Japan, Korea, & China
***C. racemosa* Lam.** *C. foemina* ssp. *racemosa* (Lam.) *C. circinata* L'Herit. J.S. Wilson *C. paniculata* L'Herit.	**gray dogwood,** western dogwood	Maine to Manitoba, S to Florida, W to Missouri & Oklahoma
***C. rugosa* Lam.** *C. circinata* L'Herit.	**roundleaf dogwood,** roundleaved dogwood, roundleaf cornel	Quebec to Manitoba, S to Virginia, W to NE Iowa
***C. sanguinea* L.** *C. sanguinea* var. *viridissima* Dieck *Swida sanguinea* (L.) Opiz	**bloodtwig dogwood,** common dogwood, dogberry, pegwood	Europe
***C. sericea* L.** *C. stolonifera* Michx. *C. baileyi* Coult. & Evans *Suida stolonifera* (Michx.) Rydb.	**red-osier dogwood,** American dogwood, kinnikinnik, squawbush	Newfoundland to Alaska, S to California, New Mexico, & Nebraska, in NE US from Wisconsin to New York
***C. sericea* ssp. *occidentalis* (Torr.& Gray) Fosberg**	**western dogwood,** California dogwood, creek dogwood	S British Columbia to N Idaho, S to S California

Source: Brinkman (1974).

ile, and a high percentage of the stones will be empty (Mugford 1969).

Extraction and storage of seeds. The stones can be readily extracted by macerating the fruits in water and allowing the pulp and empty stones to float away (see chapter 3 on seed processing) (Brinkman 1974; Mugford 1969). Stone yields and weights are summarized in table 4. If the fruits cannot be extracted immediately after fruits are collected, they should be spread out in shallow layers to prevent excessive heating; however, slight fermentation facilitates removal of the fruit pulp (Brinkman 1974; NBV 1946). Clean air-dried stones may be stored in sealed containers at 3 to 5 °C (Heit 1967; Mugford 1969; Sus 1925; Swingle 1939). Stones of flowering dogwood have been successfully stored at 4% moisture content at –7 °C for 7 years by the Georgia Forestry Commission with only a 1% decrease in viability (Brock 1997), thus demonstrating the orthodox nature of seeds of this genus. Brinkman (1974) wrote that dogwood stones could be sown without extracting them from the fruit and that stones were cleaned when storage was required and that commercial seedlots may or may not have the dried fruit attached. Presently, however, all commercial lots of dogwood seeds now are cleaned (table 4) and some nursery managers report that if the stones are not cleaned, the fruits may inhibit germination (Brock 1997). After the fruits are collected and cleaned, the stones may be sown immediately or stratified for spring-planting.

Pregermination treatments. Natural germination of most species occurs in the spring following seedfall, but some seeds do not germinate until the second spring. Germination is epigeal (figure 3). Seeds of all species show delayed germination due to dormant embryos; in most species, hard pericarps also are present. Where both types of dormancy exist warm stratification for at least 60 days in a

Table 2—*Cornus,* dogwood: phenology of flowering and fruiting

Species	Flowering	Fruit ripening	Seed dispersal
C. alba	May–June	Aug–Sept	—
C. alternifolia	May–July	July–Sept	July–Sept
C. amomum	May–July	Aug–Sept	Sept
C. canadensis	May–July	Aug	Aug–Oct
C. controversa	May–June	Aug–Sept	Oct
C. drummondii	May–June	Aug–Oct	Aug–winter
C. florida	Mar & Apr (S US)–May (N US)	Sept (N US)–Oct (S US)	Sept–Nov
C. kousa	May–June	Aug–Oct	—
C. macrophylla	July–Aug	—	—
C. mas	Feb–March	Aug–Sept	—
C. nuttallii	April–May	Sept–Oct	Sept–Oct
C. officinalis	Feb–Mar	Sept	—
C. racemosa	late May–July	July–Oct	Sept–Oct
C. rugosa	May–July	Aug–Sept	—
C. sanguinea	May–June	Aug–Sept	—
C. sericea	May–July, June–Aug (N US)	July–Oct	Oct–winter
C. sericea ssp. *occidentalis*	Apr–Aug	July–Nov	—

Sources: Asakawa, (1969), Billington (1943), Brinkman (1974), Dirr (1990), Fernald (1950), Forbes (1956), Holweg (1964), Gordon and Rowe (1982), Lakela (1965), McMinn (1951), Ohwi (1965), Rehder (1940), Rosendahl (195), Rydberg (1932), Steyermark (1963), Van Dersal (1938), Vimmerstedt (1965), Weaver (1976), Wyman (1947).

Table 3—*Cornus,* dogwood: height, seed-bearing age, seedcrop frequency, and fruit ripeness criteria

Species	Height at maturity (m)	Year first cultivated	Min seed-bearing age (yrs)	Years between large seedcrops	Ripe fruit color
C. alba	3	1741	—	—	Bluish white
C. alternifolia	5–8	1760	—	—	Dark blue
C. amomum	3	1658	4–5	1	Pale blue or bluish white
C. canadensis	0.3	—	—	—	Bright red or scarlet
C. controversa	9–18	1880	—	—	Red or purple to blue-black
C. drummondii	8–14	1836			White
C. florida	6–12	1731	6	1–2	Dark red
C. kousa	8	1875	—	2	Rose red pinkish
C. macrophylla	8–11	1827	—	—	Reddish purple to purple black
C. mas	8	Ancient	—	—	Scarlet
C. nuttallii	6–24	1835	10	2	Bright red to orange
C. officinalis	6–9	1877	—	—	Red
C. racemosa	4	1758	—	—	White
C. rugosa	3	1784	—	—	Light blue to white
C. sanguinea	2–5	—	—	—	Black
C. sericea	3–6	1656	—	—	White or lead colored
C. sericea ssp. *occidentalis*	5	—	—	—	White

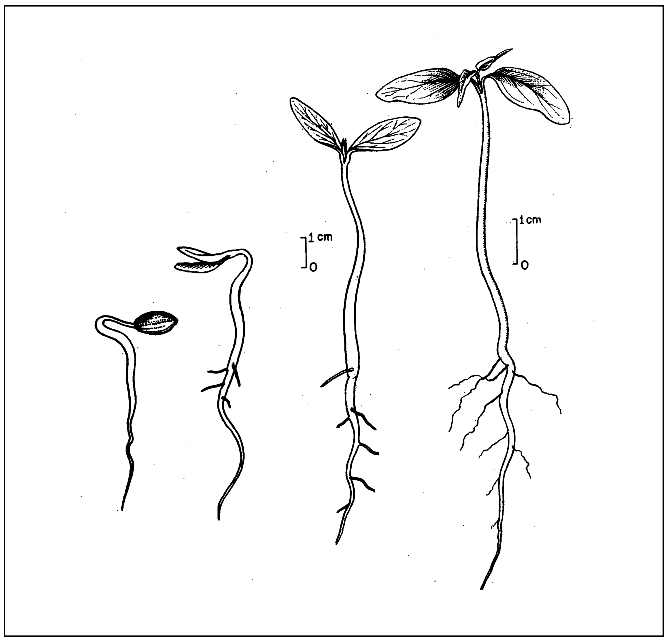
Sources: Dirr (1990), Fernald (1950), Gordon and Rowe (1982), McMinn (1951), Rehder (1940), Weaver (1976).

moist environment followed by a longer period at a much lower temperature is required (table 5). A more complicated procedure has been recommended for cornelian-cherry by Tylkowski (1992). The warm phase of treatment is at alternating temperatures (15/25 °C) on 24-hour cycles for 18 weeks, then a cold phase at 3 °C for 15 to 18 weeks or until the first germination is observed. Immersion in concentrated sulfuric acid for 1 to 4 hours or mechanical scarification can be used in place of warm stratification for most species. Soaking stones in gibberellic acid for 24 hours also has been successful for roughleaf (Furuta 1960) and flowering dogwoods (Litvinenko 1959). In species having only embryo dormancy, this can be broken by low-temperature stratification.

Germination tests. Official testing rules for dogwoods call for germination tests for some species, but rapid tests, such as tetrazolium (TZ) staining or excised embryos, are also recommended (AOSA 1993; ISTA 1993). Flowering and western dogwoods can be tested on the top of moist blotters or creped paper for 28 days at alternating temperatures of 30 °C (day) and 20 °C (night). Excised embryo testing is an alternate method for flowering dogwood, and TZ is an alternate method for western dogwood (AOSA 1993). TZ

C

Figure 3—*Cornus florida*, flowering dogwood: seedling development at 2, 4, 8, and 31 days after germination.



staining is recommended for the European species Cornelian-cherry and bloodtwig dogwood (ISTA 1993). The seeds must be soaked in water for 48 hours, then cut transversely on the ends and soaked for another 6 hours. The TZ incubation should be for 48 hours in a 1% solution; presence of any unstained tissues is cause to consider the seeds non-viable (ISTA 1993).

Germination tests using 400 properly pretreated seeds per test can be performed using sand, soil, paper, or blotters, but long stratification periods of 3 to 5 months are usually required. The same diurnally alternated temperatures of 30/20 °C appear to be satisfactory for all species (table 6), although Heit (1968a) recommended 30 and 10 °C for silky dogwood. Estimating the viability of dogwood seed lots by TZ staining is the common practice at the USDA Forest Service's National Seed Laboratory and at other seed testing facilities. In many cases, this is the preferred testing method of seed collectors and dealers, nursery managers, and seed testing laboratories. TZ tests performed by trained personnel will provide accurate, reliable data that are comparable to field germination. A TZ test only takes a few days to conduct as compared to a germination test, which requires several months of stratification before the germination period. The quicker TZ test will provide nursery managers with more time to secure different seedlot for either fall-sowing or stratification if the first seedlot is substandard or dead. Excised embryos also have been used (Flemion 1948; Heit 1955).

Nursery practices. Best results for most species are obtained when freshly collected stones are sown in the fall as soon after cleaning as possible (Heit 1968a; Stevenson 1969). Seeds of most species will germinate the following spring. Seeds of species that require a warm-cold pretreatment (table 6) can be planted in the summer but should be left in the ground until the second spring because many will not germinate the spring following planting (Murphy 1997). Dry-stored stones probably should be soaked in water and sown before October (Heit 1968a). Fruits collected too late for fall-sowing should be cleaned, stored over winter and spring, stratified in summer and sown in the fall (NBV 1946; Shumilina 1949). An alternate procedure is to stratify the seeds at about 4 °C for 3 to 4 months during the winter

Table 4—*Cornus,* dogwood: seed yield data

Species	Stones/fruit wt kg/100 kg	Stones/fruit wt lbs/100 lb	Cleaned stones/weight Range /kg	Range /lb	Average /kg	Average /lb	Samples
C. alba	—	—	27,900–40,900	12,700–18,600	33,000	15,000	33
C. alternifolia	—	—	13,000–20,500	5,900–9,300	17,600	8,000	6
C. amomum	15–18	17–20	22,400–30,800	10,200–14,000	26,800	12,200	6
C. canadensis	—	—	129,800–169,400	59,000–77,000	147,400	67,000	2
C. drummondii	16–24	18–27	18,900–46,200	8,600–21,000	34,500	15,700	5
C. florida	17–41	19–46	7,300–13,600	3,300–6,200	9,900	4,500	11
C. kousa	—	—	14,300–18,300	6,500–8,300	21,300	9,700	3
C. mas	13	15	3,500–7,500	1,600–3,400	5,000	2,300	22
*C. nuttallii**	11	12	8,800–13,400	4,000–6,100	10,300	4,700	4
C. racemosa	16–22	18–25	22,400–33,700	10,200–15,300	28,600	13,000	11
C. rugosa	—	—	—	—	41,800	19,000	1
C. sanguinea	—	—	16,100–26,000	7,300–11,800	20,200	9,200	70
C. sericea	13–18	15–20	30,400–58,700	13,800–26,700	40,700	18,500	9
C. sericea ssp. *occidentalis*	—	—	—	—	73,500	33,400	1

Sources: Asakawa (1969), Brinkman (1974), Edminster (1947), Forbes (1956), Gordon and Rowe (1982), Gorshenin (1941), Heit (1969), Mirov and Kraebel (1939), Mugford (1969), NBV (1946), Stevenson (1969), Swingle (1930).

* 0.036 cubic meters (1 bu) of fruit clusters weighed 15 kg (33 lb) and yielded 2 kg (4 lb) of stones (Brinkman 1974).

C

and sow them in the spring (Goodwin 1948; Shumilina 1949; Sus 1925). Seeds in nurserybeds should be covered with 6 to 13 mm ($^1/_4$ to $^1/_2$ in) of soil (Brinkman 1974; Heit 1968b; Mugford 1969; NBV 1946; Stevenson 1969). Seeds sown in the fall should be mulched during the winter with 13 to 25 mm ($^1/_2$ to 1 inch) of sawdust (Heit 1968a; Mugford 1969; Stevenson 1969).

Table 5—*Cornus,* dogwood: stratification treatments

	Warm period		Cold period		
Species	**Medium**	**Temp (C°)**	**Days**	**Temp (C°)**	**Duration (days)**
C. alba	—	—	—	5	90–120
C. alternifolia	Sand, peat, or mix	30–20	60	5	60
*C. amomum**	"Moist"	—	—	3–5	21–28
	Sand, peat, or moss	—	—	5	90–120
C. canadensis†	—	—	—	—	60–90
	Sand, peat, or mix	25	30–60	1	120–150
C. controversa	—	—	60–90	—	60–90
C. drummondii‡	Sand	21–27	1	5	30
		—	30–60	—	30–60
C. florida	Sand	—	—	5	120
C. kousa	Sand, peat, or vermiculite	—	—	1–5	40–120
C. macrophylla	—	—	90–150	—	90
C. mas	Soil or vermiculite	20–30	120	1–13	30–120
C. nuttallii§	Peat	—	—	3	90
C. officinalis	—	15–22	120–150	—	90
C. racemosa	Sand	20–30	60	5	60, 120
C. rugosa	Soil	—	—	Outdoors	Overwinter
C. sanguinea	—	—	60	—	60–90
C. sericea //	Sand	—	—	2–5	60–90
	Sand	—	—	5	60-90

Sources: Billington (1943), Brinkman (1974), Dirr and Heuser (1987), Emery (1988), Guan and others (1989), Goodwin (1948), Gordon and Rowe (1982), Heit (1967, 1968b), Jack (1969), Nichols (1934), Ohwi (1965), Pammel and King (1921), Peterson (1953), Soljanik (1961), Swingle (1939),
* Seeds were soaked for 3 hours in water at room temperature before stratification (Heit 1968b).
† Seeds were soaked for 1 hour in sulfuric acid before stratification (Dirr and Heuser 1987).
‡ Seeds were mechanically scarified before stratification (Brinkman 1974).
§ Seeds were soaked for 4 hours in sulfuric acid before stratification (Emery 1988).
// Seeds were soaked for 1 hour in sulfuric acid before stratification (Brinkman 1974).

Table 6—*Cornus,* dogwood: germination test conditions and results

	Germination test conditions*		Germination rate		Germination %		
Species	**Daily light (hrs)**	**Days**	**Amt (%)**	**Days**	**Average (%)**	**Samples**	**Purity (%)**
C. alba	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
C. alternifolia	8	60	8	50	10	2	63
C. amomum	8–24	14–28	86†	11	70	6	91
C. canadensis	—	60–90	6	26	16	5	90
C. drummondii	8	50	14	34	25	3	89
C. florida	8	60	14–45	15–20	35	7	97
C. kousa	—	30	—	—	85	2	—
C. macrophylla	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
C. mas	—	—	—	—	57	6	95
C. nuttallii	8–24	47	57	16	81	2	100
C. racemosa	8	60	22–30	14	20	8	83
C. rugosa	8	60+	8	15	46	4	95
C. sericea	—	60–90	35	13–18	57	18	99

Sources: Adams (1927), Asakawa (1969), Brinkman (1974), Heit (1968a&b, 1969), McKeever (1938), Nichols (1934), Peterson (1953), Soljanik (1961), Swingle (1939), Titus (1940).
*Temperatures were 30 °C for 8 hours and 20 °C for 16 hours each day. Sand was the medium used on all listed species. Additional tests were made on wet paper in germinators with seeds of *C. amomum, C. kousa,* and *C. nuttallii* (Brinkman 1974; Heit 1969).
†One test.

References

Adams J. 1927. The germination of the seeds of some plants with fleshy fruits. American Journal of Botany 14: 415–428.
AOSA [Association of Official Seed Analysts]. 1993. Rules for testing seeds. Journal of Seed Technology 16(3): 1–113.
Asakawa S. 1969. Correspondence, June 17 and November 27, 1969. Tokyo: Japanese Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry.
Billington C. 1943. Shrubs of Michigan. Cranbrook Institute of Science Bulletin 20: 1–249.
Brinkman KA. 1974. *Cornus*. L. dogwood. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 503–504.
Brock S. 1997. Personal communication. Macon: Georgia Forestry Commission.
Dirr MA. 1990. Manual of woody landscape plants: their identification, ornamental characteristics, culture propagation and uses. Champaign, IL: Stipes Publishing Co.
Dirr MA, Heuser CW. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation: from seed to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.
Edminster FC. 1947. The ruffed grouse: its life story, ecology and management. New York: Macmillan. 385 p.
Edminster FC. 1950. Use of shrubs in developing farm wildlife habitat. North American Wildlife Conference Transactions 15: 519–550.
Edminster FC, May RM. 1951. Shrub plantings for soil conservation and wildlife cover in the Northeast. Circ. 887. Washington, DC: USDA. 68 p.
Emery D. 1988. Seed propagation of native California plants. Santa Barbara, CA: Santa Barbara Botanic Garden. 115 p.
Fernald ML. 1950. Gray's manual of botany. 8th ed. New York: American Book Co. 1632 p.
Flemion F. 1948. Reliability of the excised embryo method as a rapid test for determining the germinative capacity of dormant seeds. Contributions of the Boyce Thompson Institute 15(4): 229–242.
Forbes RD, ed. 1956. Forestry handbook, Sect. 9. New York: Ronald Press: 28–31.
Furuta T. 1960. Alabama study evaluates production methods, polyethylene packing. Florist Exchange 135(1): 22–24, 26–27, 29–30, 32.
Goodwin RH. 1948. How to grow dogwood from seed. Plants and Gardens 4(4): 236–238.
Gordon AG, Rowe DCF. 1982. Seed manual for trees and shrubs. For. Comm. Bull. 59. London: United Kingdom Forestry Commission. 132 p.
Gorshenin NM. 1941. Agrolesomelioratsiya [in Russian: Agro-forest melioration]. 392 p.
Guan KL, Fan X, Zhen G. 1989. [in Chinese: Causes of seed dormancy of *Cornus officinalis* and conditions for germination]. Plant Physiology Communications 5: 24–27 [Seed Abstracts 1992; 15(12): 3972].
Heit CE. 1955. The excised embryo method for testing germination quality of dormant seed. Proceedings of the Association of Official Seed Analysts 45: 108–117.
Heit CE. 1967. Propagation from seed: 11. Storage of deciduous tree and shrub seeds. American Nurseryman 126(10): 12–13, 86–94.
Heit CE. 1968a. Propagation from seed: 15. Fall planting of shrub seeds for successful seedling production. American Nurseryman 128(4): 8–10, 70–80.
Heit CE. 1968b. Thirty-five years' testing of tree and shrub seed. Journal of Forestry 66: 632–634.
Heit CE. 1969. Correspondence, Feb. 14. Geneva, NY: Cornell University, New York State Agricultural Experiment Station Department of Seed Investigations.
Holweg AW. 1964. Some shrubs and vines for wildlife food and cover. New York Conservation 19(2): 22–27.
ISTA [International Seed Testing Association]. 1993. Rules for testing seeds: rules 1993. Seed Science and Technology 21 (Suppl.): 1–259.
Jack RA. 1969. Personal communication. Silverton, OR: Silver Falls Nursery.
Lakela O. 1965. A flora of northeastern Minnesota. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press. 541 p.
Litvinenko SN. 1959. The Ukrainian gibberellin, an effective growth stimulant. Doklady Akademii Nauk SSSR Seriya Biologiya 126: 1368–1370.
McKeever DG. 1938. The effect of various methods of treatment on germination of seeds of some plants valuable for game and erosion purposes [unpublished MS thesis]. Moscow, ID: University of Idaho.132 p.
McMinn HE. 1951. An illustrative manual of California shrubs. Berkeley: University of Califfornia Press. 663 p.
Mirov NT, Kraebel CJ. 1939. Collecting and handling seeds of wild plants. For. Pub. 5. Washington, DC: USDA Civilian Conservation Corps. 42 p.
Mugford D. 1969. Personal communication. Licking, MO: Missouri Conservation Department, George White Nursery.
Murphy K. 1997. Personal communication. Planis, MT: Lawyer Nursery.
NBV [Nederlandsche Boschbouw Vereeniging]. 1946. Boomzaden: Handleiding inzake het oogsten, behandelen, bewaren en uitzaaien van boomzaden. Wageningen, The Netherlands: Ponsen and Looijen. 171 p.
Nichols GE. 1934. The influence of exposure to winter temperatures upon seed germination in various native American plants. Ecology 15: 364–373.
Ohwi J. 1965. Flora of Japan. Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution. 1067 p.
Pammel LH, King CM. 1921. Studies in the germination of some woody plants. Proceedings of the Iowa Academy of Science 28: 273–282.
Peterson RA. 1953. Comparative effect of seed treatments upon seedling emergence in seven browse species. Ecology 34: 778–785.
Rehder A. 1940. Manual of cultivated trees and shrubs hardy in North America. New York: Macmillan. 996 p.
Rosendahl CO. 1955. Trees and shrubs of the Upper Midwest. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press. 411 p.
Rydberg PA. 1932. Flora of the prairies and plains of Central North America. New York: New York Botanical Garden. 969 p.
Shumilina ZK. 1949. Podgotovka posevu semyan drevesnykh i kustarnikovykh porod. Vses. Nauchnoissled. Inst. Agrolesomelior., Goslesbumizdat, Moskva-Leningrad [Preparation of tree and shrub seed for sowing. Transl. TT 67-51300. 1967. Springfield, VA: USDC CFSTI. 36 p.].
Soljanik I. 1961. Proizvodnja sadnica od nedozrelog sumskog semena [in Croation]. 11 p. Savez. Inz. Teh. Sum. Drvne Ind. Sad. Beograd [English transl. for USDA, 1968: Producing seedlings from unripe forest seed.].
Stevenson H. 1969. Personal communication. Elsberry, MO: Forrest Keeling Nursery.
Steyermark JA. 1963. Flora of Missouri. Ames: Iowa State University Press. 1728 p.
Sus NI. 1925. Pitomnik [in Russian: The forest nursery]. 227 p.
Swingle CF, comp. 1939. Seed propagation of trees, shrubs, and forbs for conservation planting. SCS-TP27. Washington, DC: USDA Soil Conservation Service. 198 p.
Titus GR. 1940. So-called 2-year seeds germinated first year. American Nurseryman 72(11): 22.
Tylkowski T. 1992. Thermal conditions for the after-ripening and germination of Cornelian cherry (*Cornus mas* L.) seeds. Arboretum Kornickie 36: 165–172.
Van Dersal WR. 1938. Native woody plants of the United States: their erosion-control and wildlife values. Misc. Pub. 303. Washington, DC: USDA. 362 p.
Vimmerstedt JP. 1965. Flowering dogwood (*Cornus florida* L.). In: Silvics of forest trees of the United States. Agric. Handbk. 271. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 162–166.
Weaver RE. 1976. The cornelian cherries. Arnoldia 36(2): 50–56.
Wyman D. 1947. Seed collecting dates of woody plants. Arnoldia 7(9): 53–56.

C

Betulaceae—Birch family

Corylus L.

hazel

Jill Barbour and Kenneth A. Brinkman

Ms. Barbour is a germination specialist at USDA Forest Service's National Seed Laboratory, Dry Branch, Georgia; Dr. Brinkman retired from the USDA Forest Service's North Central Forest Experiment Station

Other common names. Filbert, hazelnut.

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. The hazels—*Corylus* L.—include about 15 species of large, deciduous shrubs (rarely small trees) that occur in the temperate parts of North America, Europe, and Asia. Some species are grown for their nuts or for ornament, and most species provide food for wildlife. In this country, 4 species have present or potential value for wildlife, shelterbelt, or environmental plantings (table 1). For many years, European hazel has been cultivated for the commercial production of its edible nutmeats, known as hazelnuts or filberts, mostly in Europe but to some extent in the United States, especially in the Willamette Valley of Oregon. Years of first cultivation for other species are as follows: American hazel (1798), beaked hazel (1745), and California hazel (1910).

Flowering and fruiting. Male and female flowers are borne separately on 1-year-old lateral twigs of the same plant. They are formed late in the summer and open the following spring before the leaves appear (table 2). The male flowers are borne in clusters of 2 to 5 pendulous catkins, consisting only of stamens. The female flower is budlike, each flower has a single ovary with 2 styles that are strikingly red at pollination (Hora 1981). By late summer or early fall, the fertilized female flowers develop into fruits. These are round or egg-shaped, brown or dark-tan, hard-shelled "nuts", each containing one embryo that is enclosed in a pericarp, or shell. These nuts are enclosed in an involucre (or husk) which consists of 2 more-or-less united hairy bracts (figures 1 and 2). The seeds are naturally dispersed by animals or birds. Large seedcrops are produced at irregular intervals, usually every 2 or 3 years (NBV 1946; Vines 1960).

Collection of fruits. Hazelnuts may be eaten by rodents, larger animals, or some birds even before they are fully mature. To reduce such losses, fruits should be picked as soon as the edges of the husks begin to turn brown, which may be as early as mid-August.

Extraction and storage of seeds. The fruits should be spread out in thin layers on wire-mesh screens to dry in a room with high humidity for about 1 month. A macerator can be used to separate the nut from the husk. The machine is operated without water, and the nuts and husks pour out of the spout (Horvath 1999). An aspirator or screen cleaning machine is then needed to separate the husk debris from the nut. Alternatively, a brush machine can be used to dehisce the nut in a square-wire cylinder and a vacuum to suck out the dust, with the seeds flowing out the opening in the door (Maloney 1999). Yields and number of seeds per weight vary even within the species (table 3).

Table 1—*Corylus,* hazel: nomenclature and occurrence

Scientific name & synonym(s)	Common name(s)	Occurrence
C. americana Walt.	**American hazel,** American filbert	Maine to Saskatchewan, S to Georgia; W to Missouri & Oklahoma
C. avellana L.	**European hazel,** European filbert, common filbert	Europe, to 1,824 m in central Alps
C. cornuta **Marsh.** *C. rostrata* Ait.	**beaked hazel,** beaked filbert	Newfoundland to British Columbia, S to Georgia, Missouri, & E Colorado
C. cornuta **var.** ***californica*** **Marsh. (A.DC.) Sharp**	**California hazel,** California filbert	Coast ranges from Santa Cruz N to British Columbia

Source: Brinkman (1974).

Table 2—*Corylus,* hazel: phenology of flowering and fruiting			
Species	**Location**	**Flowering**	**Fruit ripening**
C. americana	—	Mar–May	July–Sept
C. avellana	Europe	Feb–Apr	Sept–Oct
C. cornuta	Tennessee	Jan–Feb	Aug–Sept
var. *california*	California	Jan–Feb	Sept–Oct

Sources: Fernald (1950), Loiseau (1945), Munz and Keck (1959), NBV (1946), Rosendahl (1955), Sus (1925), Van Dersal (1938), Vines (1960), Wappes (1932), Zarger

Table 3—*Corylus,* hazel: seed yield data								
				Cleaned seeds/weight				
	Place of	**Seed wt/fruit wt**		**Range**		**Average**		
Species	**collection**	**kg/45 kg**	**lb/100 lb**	**/kg**	**/lb**	**/kg**	**/lb**	**Samples**
C. americana	—	11–14	25–30	434–1,623	197–736	1,083	491	11
C. avellana	Europe	27	60	353–1,180	160–535	803	364	244
C. cornuta	—	—	—	937–1,490	425–676	549	249	3
var. *californica*	California	—	—	882–922	400–418	410	186	—

Sources: Brinkman (1974), Gors~~henin (1941), NBV (1946), Rafn~~ (1928), Swingle (1939), Vines (1960), Zarger (1968).

Figure 1—*Corylus cornuta* var. *californica*, California hazel: mature fruit including husk.

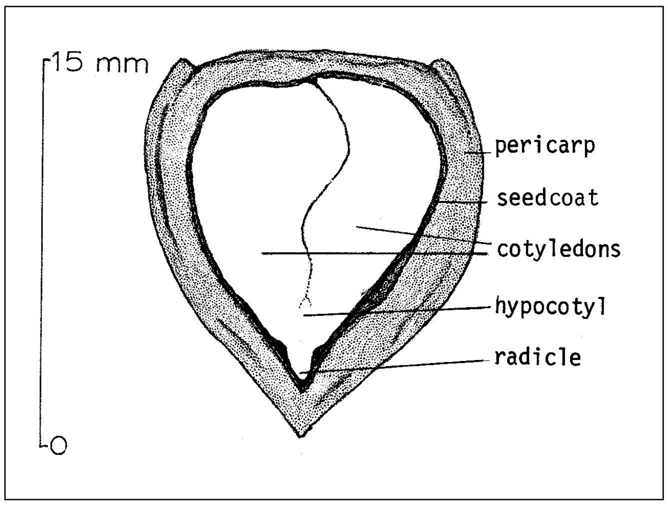


Figure 2—*Corylus cornuta* var. *californica*, California hazel: longitudinal section through a fruit.

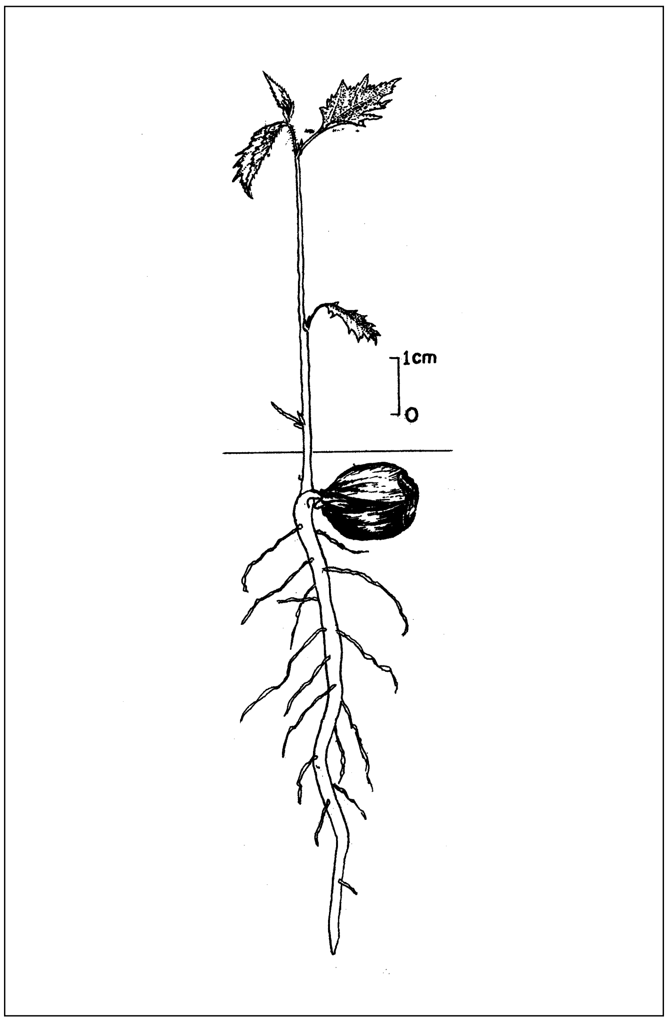
Because some dormancy is apparently induced by drying the nuts, seeds of hazel species were once thought to be recalcitrant and intolerant of any drying (Hong and Ellis 1996). Recommendations usually were to keep the hazelnuts moist after collection and store them moist over winter (stratification) before planting in the spring (Heit 1967; NBV 1946). Seeds of hazel species are now considered as orthodox in storage behavior, even though moist storage will prevent deep embryo dormancy for at least several months. Seeds of this genus will also remain viable for a year in unsealed containers at room temperature. Most of the viability of American hazelnut and some of beaked hazelnuts (Brinkman 1974) will be retained if seeds are stored in sealed containers at 5 °C. There are no long-term storage data for hazelnuts.

Pregermination treatments. Newly harvested hazelnuts are not dormant, but inhibitors present in the testa and pericarp are carried to the cotyledons and subsequently through the cotyledonary petioles into the embryonic axis (Bradbeer 1978; Jarvis 1975). Numerous studies have been

C

carried out on the nature of dormancy in European hazel, with most of them concerning the balance of gibberellins and inhibitors and starch synthesis (Arias and others 1976; Bradbeer and Pinnfield 1966; Jarvis 1975; Jarvis and Wilson 1978; Jeavons and Jarvis 1984; Li and Ross 1990). Stratification remains the method used to overcome dormancy, however. Hazel seeds require 2 to 6 months of prechilling before germination will occur (Heit 1968a&b). Three months of cold stratification has proven effective (Dirr and Heuser 1987). Stratification removes the block to gibberellin biosynthesis which begins when the seed is transferred to higher temperatures (Bradbeer and others 1978). In nurseries this can be accomplished by fall-sowing or by stratifying outdoors over winter before planting. Seeds may benefit from alternations of warm and cold stratification. Freshly harvested seeds of European hazel that were warm stratified for 3 weeks followed by 3 weeks at 4 °C germinated best (Dirr and Heuser 1987).

Figure 3—*Corylus cornuta* var. *californica*, California hazel: seedling development 30 days after germination.



Germination tests. Germination is hypogeal (figure 3). The seeds have a dormant embryo and germinate slowly without pretreatment. In one experiment, unstratified seeds of American hazel germinated throughout a year (Brinkman 1974). Giberillic acid (10^{-4} M) applied to European hazel seeds increased the germination from 64% for the control to 86% at 20 °C (Arias and others 1976). Seedlots of this species soaked in ethanol and then 0.1% (w/v) mercuric chloride, when put in a lighted chamber germinated 70% compared to seedlots germinated in total darkness, which germinated at only 9% (Jeavons and Jarvis 1996). Results of limited tests are listed in table 4.

Viability testing by staining the seeds with tetrazolium chloride (TZ) is the preferred method of ascertaining the seed's quality (ISTA 1993). Seeds should be cracked and soaked in water for 18 hours. After 1 to 2 mm of the cotyledons is cut off at the distal ends and the seeds are split longitudinally, the embryos should be incubated for 12 to 15 hours in 1% TZ, or 18 to 24 hours in a 0.5% solution. Some unstained tissue is allowed in viable seeds, but interpretation is difficult. Standard germination tests can also be performed once the pericarp is removed and the seeds are prechilled for 2 months at 3 to 5 °C (ISTA 1993).

Nursery practice. Although spring-sowing of stratified seeds is feasible, most nurseries plant hazel seeds in the fall (Sus 1925). In Holland, seeds of European hazel are mixed with moist sand for several months before sowing in the fall (NBV 1946). In Tennessee, good results with this species were obtained by storing fresh seed dry at 3 °C until planting in October; average tree percent was 98 based on 80% viability (Zarger 1968). Two seedlots of American hazel planted in November and December gave tree percents of 63 and 48, based on 70 and 60% viability. Seeds of both species were sown 2.5 cm (1 in) deep in drills and covered with 2.5 to 3.75 cm (1 to 1.5 in) of sawdust. In this report, the seedbeds had been fumigated with methyl bromide; other fumigants are now recommended. If seedling densities are kept low, from 43 to 65/m^2 (4 to 6/ft^2), hazel can be outplanted when 1 year old. European hazel and horticultural varieties are frequently propagated by cuttings, grafting, and tissue culture (Dirr and Heuser 1987).

Hazels are attacked by several fungi. The powdery mildew of hardwoods—*Phyllactinia guttata* (Wallr.:Fr.) Lév. (synonym *Phyllactinia corylea* (Pers.) P. Karst.)—will defoliate the plant. More serious attacks by the fungal parasite *Nematospora coryli* Peglion cause malformation of the nuts (Hora 1981). Hazelnuts are also attacked by the brown rot of pome and stone fruits—*Monilinia fructigena* Honey in Whetzel (synonym *Sclerotinia fructigena* Aderhold. ex Sacc.)—which enters through punctures caused by *Balaninus nuceum*, the nut weevil (Hora 1981).

Table 4—*Corylus,* hazel: germination test conditions and results

	Germination test conditions				Germinative energy		Germinative capacity		
		Temp (°)			Amt		Average		Purity
Species	Medium	Day	Night	Days	(%)	Days	(%)	Samples	(%)
C. americana	Sand	30	20	60	10	30	13	2	96
C. avellana	Sand or germinator	30	20	60	—	—	69	13	95
C. cornuta	Sand	30	20	60	1	26	1	1	99
var. *californica*	Sand	30	20	90	—	—	20	1	62

Sources: Brinkman (1974), NBV (1946), Rafn (1928), Shumilina (1949).

References

Arias I, Williams PM, Bradbeer JW. 1976. Studies in seed dormancy: 9. The role of gibberellin biosynthesis and the release of bound gibberellin in the post-chilling accumulation of gibberellin in seeds of *Corylus avellana* L. Planta 131: 135–139.

Bradbeer JW, Pinfield NJ. 1966. Studies in seed dormancy: 3. The effects of gibberellin on dormant seeds of *Corylus avellana* L. New Phytologist 66: 515–523.

Bradbeer JW, Arias IE, Nirmala HS. 1978. The role of chilling in the breaking of seed dormancy in *Corylus avellana* L. Pesticide Science 9: 184–186.

Brinkman KA. 1974. *Corylus* L., hazel, filbert. In: Schopmeyer SC, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 343–345.

Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation from seed to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Fernald ML. 1950. Gray's manual of botany. 8th ed. New York: American Book Co. 1632 p.

Gorshenin NM. 1941. Agrolesomelioratsiya [in Russian: Agro-forest melioration]. 392 p.

Heit CE. 1967. Propagation from seed: 11. Storage of deciduous tree and shrub seeds. American Nurseryman 126 (10): 12–13, 86–94.

Heit CE. 1968a. Propagation from seed: 15. Fall planting of shrub seeds for successful seedling production. American Nurseryman 128(4): 8–10, 70–80.

Heit CE. 1968b. Thirty-five years' testing of tree and shrub seed. Journal of Forestry 66: 632–634.

Hong TD, Ellis RH. 1996. A protocol to determine seed storage behavior. Tech. Bull. 1. Rome: International Plant Genetic Resources Institute. 62 p.

Hora B. 1981. The Oxford encyclopedia of trees of the world. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press. 288 p.

Horvath D. 1999. Personal communication. Topeka, IL: Mason State Nursery.

ISTA [International Seed Testing Association]. 1993. International rules for seed testing. Seed Science and Technology 21 (suppl.): 1–288.

Jarvis BC. 1975. The role of seed parts in the induction of dormancy of hazel (*Corylus avellana* L.). New Phytologist 75: 491–494.

Jarvis BC, Wilson DA. 1978. Factors influencing growth of embryonic axes from dormant seeds of hazel (*Corylus avellana* L.). Planta 138: 189–191.

Jeavons RA, Jarvis BC. 1984. The breaking of dormancy in hazel seed by pretreatment with ethanol and mercuric chloride. New Phytologist 96: 551–554.

Li L, Ross JD. 1990. Starch synthesis during dormancy breakage in oilseed of *Corylus avellana*. Annals of Botany 66: 507–512.

Loiseau J. 1945. Les arbres et la foret. 204 p. Paris.

Maloney J. 1999. Personal communication. Licking, MO: George O. White Nursery.

Munz PA, Keck DD. 1959. A California flora. Berkeley: University of California Press. 1681 p.

NBV [Nederlandsche Boschbouw Vereeniging]. 1946. Boomzaden: handleiding inzake het oogsten, behandelen, bewaren en uitzaaien van boomzaden [in Dutch: Tree seed: handbook on hte collection, extraction, storage, and sowing of tree seed]. Wageningen, The Netherlands: Ponsen and Looijen. 171 p.

Rafn J & Son. [circa] 1928. Skovfrökontoret's Fröanalyser gennem 40 Aar, 1887–1927. Udfört paa Statsfrökontrollen i Köbenhavn. Copenhagen. 5 p.

Rosendahl CO. 1955. Trees and shrubs of the Upper Midwest. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press. 411 p.

Shumilina ZK. 1949. Stratifikatsiya semyan drevesnykh i kustarnikovykh porod. Vsesoyuznoe Nauchno-Issledovatel'skii Institut Agrolesomelior. Goslestekhizdat, Moskva. [Stratification of seeds of trees and shrubs. Transl. OTS-60-51012, 1961. Springfield, VA: USDC CFSTI, NTIS, 64 p.].

Sus NI. 1925. Pitomnik [in Russian: The forest nursery]. 27 p.

Swingle CF, comp. 1939. Seed propagation of trees, shrubs, and forbs for conservation planting. TP-27. Washington, DC: USDA Soil Conservation Service. 198 p.

Van Dersal WR. 1938. Native woody plants of the United States: their erosion-control and wildlife values. Misc. Pub. 303. Washington, DC: USDA. 362 p.

Vines RA. 1960. Trees, shrubs, and woody vines of the Southwest. Austin: University of Texas Press. 1104 p.

Wappes L. 1932. Wald und Holz ein Nachschlagebuch für die Praxis der Forstwirte, Holzhändler und Holzindustriellen. Volume 1. Berlin: J. Neumann. 872 p.

Zarger TG. 1968. Personal communication. Tennessee Valley Authority, Division of Forests & Development.

Anacardiaceae—Sumac family

Cotinus P. Mill.

smoketree or smokebush

Paula M. Pijut

Dr. Pijut is a research plant physiologist at the USDA Forest Service's North Central Research Station, Hardwood Tree Improvement and Regeneration Center, West Lafayette, Indiana

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. The genus *Cotinus* P. Mill—smoketree— includes 3 or 4 species of deciduous, polygamous or dioecious, small trees or shrubs, widely distributed through central and southern Europe to the Himalayas, southwest China, and the southeastern United States (Hillier 1991; Krüssmann 1984). The smoketrees are cultivated primarily for ornamental purposes. The durable wood of American smoketree has been used for fence posts (Koller and Shadow 1991; LHBH 1976) and it also yields a yellow dye that was widely used during the Civil War (Vines 1960). Common smoketree is used in Bulgarian medicine for its anti-inflammatory, antibacterial, and wound-healing properties (Tsankova and others 1993). The 2 species of interest are described in table 1.

Common smoketree is an upright, spreading, multi-stemmed shrub that is grown because of its many ornamental landscape qualities and its adaptability to widely divergent soils and pH ranges (Dirr 1990). Several cultivars produce a long period of midsummer floral and fruit ornamentation, showy plumose inflorescences, and vivid autumn foliage color (Dirr 1990; Hillier 1991; Koller and Shadow 1991; Krüssmann 1984). Of special note are 'Nordine Red', the hardiest of the purple-leaf smokebushes, and 'Royal Purple', a cultivar with rich maroon-red foliage and purplish red inflorescences (Dirr 1990). The foliage of this last cultivar accumulates anthocyanin pigments in response to ultraviolet light of wavelengths between 300 and 400 nm and low temperatures (Oren-Shamir and Levi-Nissim 1997).

American smoketree is a large, upright shrub or small, round-headed tree with bluish to dark green leaves that turn a brilliant yellow, orange, red, and reddish purple color in the fall (Dirr 1990). The bark of the American smoketree is a beautiful gray to gray-brown, and scaly mature trunks (that is, with a fishlike scale effect), providing pattern and detail in the winter landscape (Dirr 1990; Koller and Shadow 1991). For a review of *Cotinus* and discussion of selected cultivars, see Tripp (1994).

Flowering and fruiting. The small, usually infertile, yellowish flowers, which bloom in June to July (April to May for American smoketree), are borne in large, terminal panicles (Krüssmann 1984). The pedicels and peduncles lengthen after flowering and are clad with fine hairs, creating the smokelike effect that gives the plant its common name (LHBH 1976). The plumelike inflorescences often persist through September (Dirr 1990). The fruit (figures 1 and 2) is a dry, reticulate drupe about 3 to 6 mm in length, light red-brown in color (ripening to near black), containing a thick, bony stone (Rudolf 1974). Seedcrops are produced annually but are often poor. The kidney-shaped drupe ripens in the fall, which is usually August to October for common

Table 1—*Cotinus*, smoketree: nomenclature, occurrence, growth habit, height at maturity, and date first cultivated

Scientific name(s)	Common name(s)	Occurrence	Growth habit	Height (m)	Year first cultivated
C. coggygria **Scop.** *C. americanus* Nutt. *C. cotinoides* (Nutt. ex Chapm.) Britt.	**common smoketree**, smokebush, European smoketree, Venetian sumac	Central & S Europe, Himalayas & to SW China	Shrub	2.5–4.6	1656
C. obovatus **Raf.**	**American smoketree**, yellowwood	Tennessee, S to Alabama & Missouri, W to Texas	Tree	6.1–9.1	1882

Sources: Dirr (1990), LHBH (1976).

Figure 1—*Cotinus obovatus*, American smoketree: seeds.

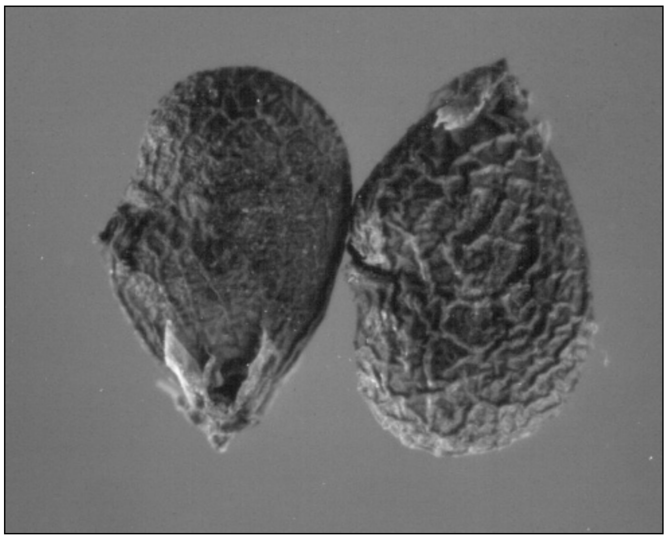
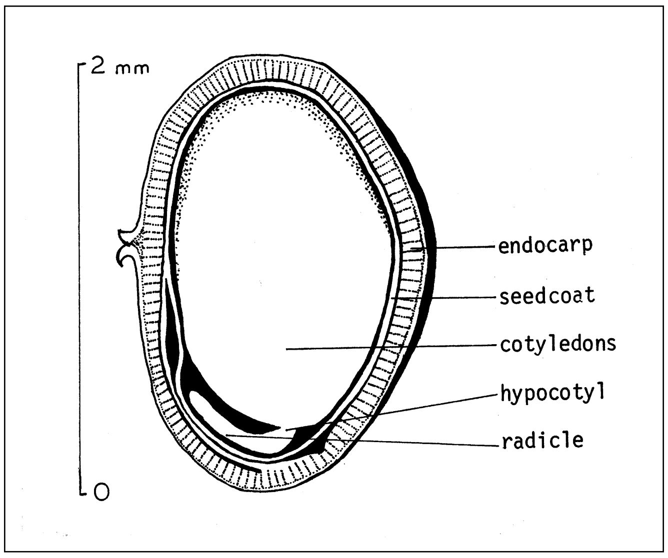


Figure 2—*Cotinus obovatus*, American smoketree: longitudinal section through a seed.



smoketree and June to September for American smoketree (Rudolf 1974).

Collection of fruits; extraction, cleaning, and storage of seeds. The fruits should be harvested by hand as soon as they are ripe (Rudolf 1974). Seeds of common smoketree that are collected green during late August–September and sown immediately can produce high germination percentages the following spring (Dirr and Heuser 1987). Seeds collected from purple-leaf forms produce a mixture of green-leaf and purple-leaf seedlings (Dirr and Heuser 1987). Dry fruits should be run through a hammermill and the debris fanned out (Rudolf 1974). The number of cleaned seeds per seed weight for common smoketree ranges between 99,978 to 118,999/kg (45,350 to 53,978/lb) with 75% germination and 97% purity, depending upon cleaning techniques (Allen 1994). The average number of cleaned seeds per weight for American smoketree is 111,111/kg (50,400/lb) (Rudolf 1974).

Information on smoketree seed storage is limited, but the indications are strong that these seeds are orthodox in storage behavior. One report states that seeds of common smoketree can be stored dry for several years in open or sealed containers at room temperature (Heit 1967, cited by Rudolf 1974). However, the best practice is to store dry seeds in a metal or rigid plastic container that is then sealed and stored in a refrigerator at 0 to 5 °C (Macdonald 1986). Seeds stored in this manner will be viable for a number of years.

Pregermination treatments. Smoketree seeds have both a hard seedcoat and an internal dormancy, thus causing slow and irregular germination. Seeds can be stimulated to germinate more uniformly by sulfuric acid scarification followed by cold stratification (table 2). Seeds from a recent introduction (Dummer hybrids) that were acid-scarified for 3 hours (no cold stratification given) and then planted germinated in 12 days (Dirr 1990).

Germination tests. Pretreated smoketree seeds may be tested for 30 days in sphagnum flats or in seed germinators (Rudolf 1974). Average test results for 2 species are shown in table 3. Tetrazolium staining can be used for rapid estimates. Seeds should be soaked in water for 24 hours before breaking open the seed coat and staining 24 hour at 30 °C in a 1% solution (Enescv 1991).

Nursery practice and seedling care. Smoketree seeds are fall-sown without pretreatment if the fruits are slightly green (Dirr 1990; Macdonald 1986; Rudolf 1974) or with pretreatment in the spring at a rate of 430/m^2 (40/ft^2) (Rudolf 1974). The seed should be covered with 6 to 9 mm ($^1/_4$ to $^3/_8$ in) of soil, and fall-sown beds should be mulched with sawdust (Rudolf 1974). Seedlings may be planted as 1+0 stock (Rudolf 1974).

Several references noted that common smoketree should be propagated by vegetative methods, because many seedlings are male plants lacking the showy flowering panicles (Dirr 1990; Dirr and Heuser 1987; Hartmann and others 1990; Macdonald 1986). In general, softwood cuttings taken in early June to July, treated with 1 to 3 g/liter (1,000 to 3,000 ppm) indole-3-butyric acid solution, and placed in a well-drained medium under mist will root in about 4 to 8 weeks (Blakesley and others 1991, 1992; Dirr 1990; Dirr and Heuser 1987; Hartmann and others 1990; Kelley and

C

Table 2—*Cotinus*, smoketree: seed pregermination treatments

	Scarification	Stratification treatments		
Species	in H_2SO_4 (min)	Moist medium	Temp (°C)	Days
C. coggygria	30	Sand	3	45–60
	30/60	Sphagnum moss	5	90
	20/80	Peat	3	60–80
C. obovatus	20/40	Plastic bag	3	60

Sources: Dirr and Heuser (1987), Gonderman and O'Rourke (1961), Heit (1968) cited by Rudolf (1974), Stilinovic and Grbic (1988).

Table 3—*Cotinus*, smoketree: germination test conditions and results with pretreated seed

	Germination test conditions				Germination rate		Germination		Sound-
		Temp (°C)							
Species	Medium	Day	Night	Days	%	Days	%	Samples	ness (%)
C. coggygria	Germinator	20	20	30	—	—	80	2	70
	Sphagnum	21	21	21	—	—	93	2	—
C. obovatus	Kimpak in germinator	30*	20	46	37	11	39	3	60†

Source: Rudolf (1974).
* With light for 8 hours.
† Purity was 96%.

Foret 1977; Macdonald 1986; Siftar 1981). Rooted cuttings must be overwintered without disturbance and transplanted in the spring. Spellerberg (1985, 1986) reported improved shoot growth and higher rooting percentages of common smoke tree cv. 'Royal Purple' cuttings when they were taken in April from mother plants forced under glass than cuttings taken in June from outdoor-grown plants. After rooting, shoot growth was promoted by longer photoperiods, higher carbon dioxide levels, and gibberellic acid treatments. Howard (1996) reported that rooting of 'Royal Purple" cuttings was confined to the period of active shoot growth (late May to early August), and a small benefit was noted with severe stock plant pruning. Common smoketree can also be successfully propagated by French or continuous layering (Macdonald 1986).

References

Allen DH. 1994. Personal communication. Sandwich, MA: FW Schumacher Co., Inc.

Blakesley D, Weston GD, Elliott MC. 1991. Endogenous levels of indole-3-acetic acid and abscisic acid during the rooting of *Cotinus coggygria* cuttings taken at different times of the year. Plant Growth Regulation 10(1): 1–12.

Blakesley D, Weston GD, Elliot MC. 1992. Increased rooting and survival of *Cotinus coggygria* cuttings from etiolated stock plants. Journal of Horticultural Science 67(1): 33–37.

Dirr MA. 1990. Manual of woody landscape plants: their identification, ornamental characteristics, culture, propagation, and uses. Champaign, IL: Stipes Publishing Company. 1007 p.

Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation: from seed to tissue culture. Athens, GA.: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Enescv V. 1991. The tetrazolium test of viability. In: Gordon, AG, Gosling P, Wang BSP, eds. Tree and shrub seed handbook. Zurich: International Seed Testing Association: 9, 1–19.

Gonderman RL, O'Rourke FLS. 1961. Factors affecting the germination of *Koelreuteria* seed. Combined Proceedings of the International Plant Propagators Society 11: 98–109.

Hartmann HT, Kester DE, Davies FT. 1990. Plant propagation: principles and practices. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall. 647 p.

Heit CE. 1967. Propagation from seed: 11. Storage of deciduous tree and shrub seeds. American Nurseryman 126 (10): 12–13, 86–94.

Hillier Nurseries (Winchester) Ltd. 1991. The Hillier manual of trees and shrubs. Melksham, Wiltshire, UK: Redwood Press. 704 p.

Howard BH. 1996. Relationships between shoot growth and rooting of cuttings in three contrasting species of ornamental shrub. Journal of Horticultural Science 71(4): 591–605.

Kelley JD, Foret JE. 1977. Effect of timing and wood maturity on rooting of cuttings of *Cotinus coggygria* 'Royal Purple'. Combined Proceedings of the International Plant Propagators Society 27: 445–449.

Koller GL, Shadow DO. 1991. In praise of the American smoke tree. Arnoldia 51(4): 55–58.

Krüssmann G. 1984. Manual of cultivated broad-leaved trees and shrubs. Volume A–D. Beaverton, OR: Timber Press. 448 p.

LHBH [Liberty Hyde Bailey Hortorium]. 1976. Hortus third: a concise dictionary of plants cultivated in the United States and Canada. New York: Macmillan Publishing. 1290 p.
Macdonald B. 1986. Practical woody plant propagation for nursery growers. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 669 p.
Oren-Shamir M, Levi-Nissim A. 1997. UV-light effect on the leaf pigmentation of *Cotinus coggygria* 'Royal Purple'. Scientia Horticulturae 71(1/2): 59–66.
Rudolf PO. 1974. *Cotinus*, smoketree. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 346–348.
Siftar A. 1981. Ucinek kinetina (6-furfurilaminopurin), IBA (indol maslene kisline) in fenofaz na induciranje adventivnih korenin pri zelenih potaknjencih rdecelistnega ruja (*Cotinus coggygria* Scop. 'Royal Purple') v pogojih meglenja [in Slovenian, with English summary: Effect of kinetin (6-furfurilamino purin), IBA (indolebutyric acid) and phenophases on induction of adventitious roots in Venetian sumach softwood cutting (*Cotinus coggygria* Scop. 'Royal Purple') under mist spray conditions]. Zbornik Biotehniske Fakultete Univerze E.K. v Ljubljani 37: 177–212.
Spellerberg B. 1985. Verbesserung des Vermehrungserfolges bei Schwer vermehrbaren Laubgeholzen: 1. Der Einfluss des Vermehrungsklimas auf Inhaltsstoffe und weiteres Wachtum der bewurzelten Stecklinge [in German, with English summary: Improved propagation of difficult-to-root deciduous ornamental shrubs: 1. Influence of climate on carbohydrate contents and continuous growth of rooted cuttings]. Gartenbauwissenschaft 50(2): 71–77.
Spellerberg B. 1986. Verbesserung des Vermehrungserfolges bei Schwer vermehrbaren Laubgeholzen: 2. Stecktermin und wachstumsfordernde Mabnahmen fuer Austriebsleitung und anschliebende Ueberwinterungsrate der bewurzelten stecklinge. [In German, with English summary: Improved propagation of difficult-to-root deciduous ornamental shrubs. 2. Effects of date of sticking and growth stimulating treatments on bud burst and overwintering of rooted cuttings]. Gartenbauwissenschaft 51(4): 159–165.
Stilinovic S, Grbic M. 1988. Effect of various presowing treatments on the germination of some woody ornamental seeds. Acta Horticulturae 226(1): 239–245.
Tripp KE. 1994. Considering *Cotinus*. Arnoldia 54(2): 20–30.
Tsankova ET, Dyulgerov AS, Milenkov BK. 1993. Chemical composition of the Bulgarian sumac oil. Journal of Essential Oil Research 5: 205–207.
Vines RA. 1960. Trees, shrubs and woody vines of the Southwest. Austin: University of Texas Press. 1104 p.

C

Rosaceae—Rose family

Cotoneaster Medik.

cotoneaster

Paul E. Slabaugh and Nancy L. Shaw

Dr. Slabaugh (deceased) retired from the USDA Forest Service's Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station; Dr. Shaw is a research botanist at the USDA Forest Service's Rocky Mountain Research Station, Forestry Sciences Laboratory, Boise, Idaho

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. The genus *Cotoneaster* includes about 50 species of shrubs and small trees native to the temperate regions of Europe, northern Africa, and Asia (excepting Japan) (Cumming 1960). Growth habits range from nearly prostrate to upright. Cold-hardy types are more or less deciduous, whereas those native to warmer regions are evergreen (Heriteau 1990). Cotoneasters are valued as ornamentals for their glossy green foliage, attractive fruits, and interesting growth habits. Fall foliage color is often a showy blend of orange and red. Cotoneasters are adapted to sunny locations with moderately deep and moderately well-drained silty to sandy soils. Several hardy species are commonly used in mass plantings, hedges, shelterbelts, wildlife plantings, windbreaks, recreational areas, and along transportation corridors on the northern Great Plains, the southern portions of adjoining Canadian provinces, and occasionally in the Intermountain region and other areas (Plummer and others 1968; Shaw and others 2004; Slabaugh 1974). They require little maintenance and provide ground cover, soil stabilization, snow entrapment, and aesthetic values. Peking cotoneaster provides food and cover for wildlife (Johnson and Anderson 1980; Kufeld and others 1973; Leach 1956; Miller and others 1948). Six species used in conservation plantings are described in table 1 (Hoag 1965; Nonnecke 1954; Plummer and others 1977; Rheder 1940; USDA SCS 1988; Zucker 1966). Use of cotoneasters in some areas may be limited due to their susceptibility to fire blight (infection with the bacterium *Erwinia amylovora*), borers (*Chrysobothris femorata* (*Olivier*)), lace bugs (*Corythucha cydonia* (Fitch)), and red spiders (*Oligonychus platani* (McGregor)(Griffiths 1994; Krüssmann 1986; Wyman 1986).

Cotoneasters are apomictic and will, therefore, propagate true from seed (Wyman 1986). However, because of the apomictic habit, many variants occur within each species (Everett 1982). This variability has been exploited in cultivar

Table 1—*Cotoneaster,* cotoneaster: nomenclature and occurrence

Scientific name & synonym(s)	Common name(s)	Occurrence
***C. acutifolius* Turcz.** *C. acutifolia* Turcz. *C. pekinensis* Zab.	**Peking cotoneaster**	North China; introduced from North Dakota to Nebraska & upper mid-West, S Canadian prairie provinces
***C. apiculatus* Rehd. & Wilson** *C. apiculata* Rehd. & Wilson	**cranberry cotoneaster**	W China; introduced from North Dakota to Nebraska & upper mid-West
***C. horizontalis* Dcne.** *C. davidiana* Hort.	**rock cotoneaster,** rockspray cotoneaster, quinceberry	W China; introduced from North Dakota to Nebraska & upper mid-West, S central Washington
***C. integerrimus* Medic.** *C. vulgaris* Lindl.	**European cotoneaster**	Europe, W Asia, Siberia
***C. lucidus* Schltdl.** *C. acutifolia* Lindl., not Turcz. *C. sinensis* Hort.	**hedge cotoneaster**	Altai Mtns & Lake Baikal region of Asia
***C. niger* (Thunb.) Fries** *C. melanocarpus* Lodd.	**black cotoneaster,** darkseed cotoneaster	Europe to NE & central Asia, introduced from North Dakota to Nebraska

Source: Krüssmann (1986), LHBH (1976), Slabaugh (1974).

development (Krüssmann 1986; LHBH 1976). A number of hybrids have also been developed as ornamentals.

Flowering and fruiting. Cotoneaster flowers are perfect, regular, and white to pink. They develop singly or several to many together in corymbs produced at the ends of leafy lateral branchlets. Flowers are small, but in some species attractive due to their abundance. Fruits are black or red berrylike pomes that ripen in late summer or early fall and often persist into winter (Wyman 1949) (figure 1). The fruits contain 1 to 5 seeds (Rehder 1940) (figures 2 and 3), averaging 3 for Peking, hedge, and black cotoneasters; 2 for cranberry and rock cotoneasters; and 2 or 3 for European cotoneasters (Uhlinger 1968, 1970). Phenological data are provided in table 2.

Collection of fruits. Ripe fruits are collected by hand stripping or flailing in early autumn, preferably after leaf fall. Fruit firmness and color (table 3) are good criteria of ripeness. Leslie (1954) recommends that fruits of Peking, hedge, and black cotoneasters be collected slightly green. The minimum fruit-bearing age of hedge cotoneaster is 3 years. Fruit crops are produced annually.

Extraction, cleaning, and storage of seeds. Seeds may be extracted by macerating fresh fruits and skimming off or screening out the pulp. Seeds are best cleaned while fresh, because it is difficult to remove dry fleshy material by maceration. Most empty seeds can be eliminated by floating the seedlot twice in water (Uhlinger 1968, 1970). Seeds may be removed from dried fruits by abrasion (Slabaugh 1974) and the debris separated using a 2-screen fanning machine. Number of seeds per weight for 3 species are provided in table 4. About 0.5 kg (1 lb) of cleaned seeds of European cotoneaster are obtained from 2.7 kg (6 lb) of fruits (USDA SCS 1988). Seeds of the cotoneasters are orthodox in storage behavior. Leslie (1954) and USDA SCS (1988) recommend that seeds of cotoneasters be stored dry in sealed containers in a cool place. Seeds of European cotoneaster, however, can be stored in an unheated warehouse for at least 16 years without loss of viability (Jorgensen 1996; Plummer 1968).

Pregermination treatments. Seeds of many cotoneasters exhibit double dormancy due to their hard, impermeable seedcoats and the physiological condition of their embryos. First-year germination is enhanced by acid scarification followed by warm incubation and wet prechilling (USDA SCS 1988) (table 5). Addition of a commercial compost activator to the wet prechilling medium reportedly improved emergence of spreading cotoneaster—*C. divaricatus* Rehd. & Wilson (Cullum and Gordon 1994).

Figure 1—*Cotoneaster*, cotoneaster: fruits.

Figure 2—*Cotoneaster*, cotoneaster: seeds **(from top to bottom)** of *C. apiculanyus,* cranberry cotoneaster; *C. horizontalis,* rock cotoneaster; *C. lucidus,* hedge cotoneaster; *C. niger,* blackcotoneaster.

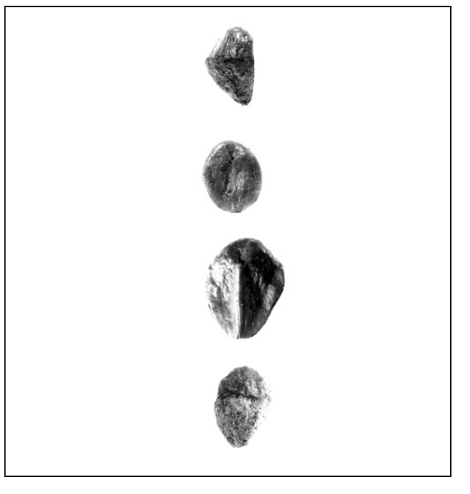


Figure 3—*Cotoneaster horizontalis*, rock cotoneaster: longitudinal section through a seed.

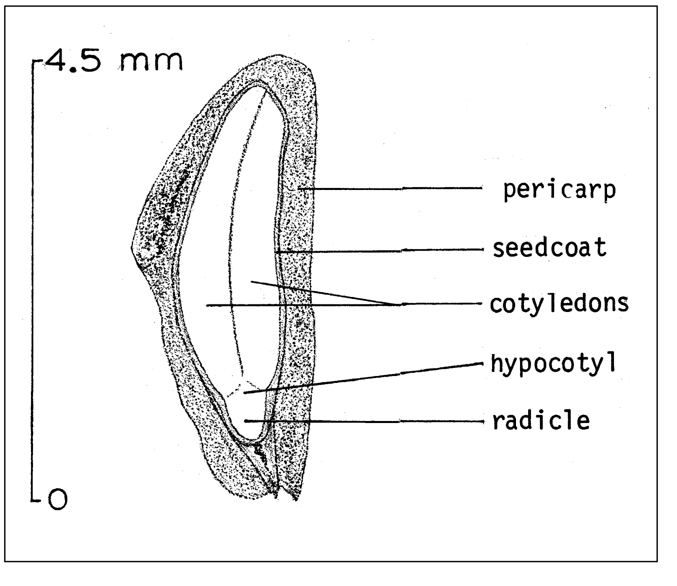


Table 2—*Cotoneaster,* cotoneaster: phenology of flowering and fruiting

Species	Location	Flowering	Fruit ripening	Seed dispersal
C. acutifolius	N Great Plains	May–June	Sept–Oct	Sept–winter
C. apiculatus	S Michigan	May–June	Aug–Sept	Fall–winter
C. horizontalis	—	June	Sept–Nov	Sept–winter
C. integerrimus	Great Plains	May–June	Aug–Sept	—
C. lucidus	North Dakota	May–June	Sept	—
C. niger	—	May–June	—	—

Sources: Krüssmann (1986), Macdonald (1986), Slabaugh (1974), USDA SCS(1988), Zucker (1966).

Table 3—*Cotoneaster,* cotoneaster: height, year first cultivated, and color of flowers and ripe fruit

Species	Height at maturity (m)	Year first cultivated	Flower color	Color of ripe fruit
C. acutifolius	1.8–3.9	1883	Pink	Black
C. apiculatus	0.3–1.5	1910	Pink	Scarlet
C. horizontalis	0.9–1.2	1880	White-pink	Light to dark red
C. integerrimus	1.2–3.6	—	Pinkish	Red
C. lucidus	1.8–2.7	1840	White, tinged w/pink	Black
C. niger	1.5–2.4	1829	Pinkish-white	Blackish red

Sources: Griffiths (1994), Hoag (1958, 1965), LHBH (1976), Leslie (1954), Krüssmann (1986), Rehder (1940), Rosendahl (1955), USDA SCS (1988).

Table 4—*Cotoneaster,* cotoneaster: seed yield data

	Cleaned seeds/weight			
	Range		Average	
Species	/kg	/lb	/kg	/lb
C. acutifolus	48,466–58,212	21,984–26,405	59,300	26,900
C. horizontalis	—	—	141,094	64,000
C. integerrimus	—	—	35,274	16,000
C. lucidus	—	—	51,560	23,390

Sources: Cumming (1960), McDermand (1969), Plummer and others (1968), Slabaugh (1974), Uhlinger (1968, 1970), USDA SCS (1988).

Table 5—*Cotoneaster,* cotoneaster: pregermination treatments

		Wet prechill at 4 °C	
Species	Immersion time in conc H_2SO_4 (min)	Medium	Period (days)
C. acutifolius	10–90	Peat	30–90
C. apiculatus	60–120	Sand & peat	60–90
C. horizontalis	90–180	Peat	90–120
C. integerrimus	120	—	120*
C. lucidus	5–20	Sand & perlite	30–90
C. niger	10–90	Peat	30–90

Sources: Dirr and Heuser (1987), Fordham (1962), Leslie (1954), McDermand (1969), Slabaugh (1974), Smith (1951), Uhlinger (1968, 1970), USDA SCS (1988).
* Wet prechilling was preceded by 90 days of warm incubation at 21 °C.

Duration of effective pretreatments varies with species, seedlot, and year due to differences in seedcoat thickness and degree of embryo dormancy. Meyer (1988), for example, found that seeds of cranberry and spreading cotoneasters scarified for 1.5 hours in concentrated sulfuric acid germinated over an increasing range of incubation temperatures as the duration of wet prechilling at 2 °C increased from 0 to 4 months. After 4 months of prechilling, germination of both species occurred at constant incubation temperatures from 4.5 to 26.5 °C. This variability in response adds to the difficulty of securing prompt, consistent germination (Uhlinger 1968, 1970).

Germination tests. Table 6 lists germination test conditions and results for 4 cotoneaster species (see table 5 for pretreatments). The effect of light on germination of seeds of Peking, hedge, and black cotoneasters varies among seedlots, but germination of black cotoneaster was generally improved by exposure to cool-white fluorescent light (Uhlinger 1968, 1970). Pretreatment with gibberellic acid partially replaced the effect of light (Uhlinger 1968, 1970).

Because of the dormancy in these seeds, the International Seed Testing Association recommends use of tetrazolium staining rather than germination tests for evaluation of seed quality (ISTA 1993). Seeds are stained by first soaking them in water for 18 hours, then removing the distal third of the seeds with a transverse cut; and finally placing the seeds in a 1.0% solution of tetrazolium chloride for 20 to 24 hours. Viable seeds usually stain completely, but seeds are considered viable if only the radicle tip and the distal third of the cotyledons are unstained (ISTA 1993).

The excised embryo method may also be used to test seed germinability of spreading cotoneaster (Smith 1951). Seeds are first scarified in sulfuric acid for 3 hours, then soaked in 27 °C tapwater for 2 days before the embryos are excised and incubated under conditions favorable for germination.

Nursery practice. Seeds of cotoneaster species may be given appropriate scarification pretreatments and seeded in midsummer to provide the warm incubation and overwinter wet-prechilling required to relieve dormancy and permit germination in the spring. Scarified seeds provided with warm incubation pretreatment in the laboratory may be fall-planted; however, scarification, warm incubation, and wet prechilling in the laboratory are required for spring-planting. A seeding rate of 250 seeds/m^2 (23/ft^2) is recommended for producing lining-out stock of rock cotoneaster (Macdonald 1993); 100 to 130 seeds/m^2 (10 to 12/ft^2) are recommended for European cotoneaster var. 'Centennial' (USDA SCS 1988). Seeds of this variety are planted 0.3 cm (0.1 in) deep and covered with 1.5 to 2 cm (3/5 to 4/5 in) of soil (USDA SCS 1988). European and hedge cotoneaster seedbeds may be mulched with hay or other suitable material (Hinds 1969; USDA SCS 1988). Filtered shade until August is recommended for seedlings of Peking, hedge, and black cotoneasters (Leslie 1954). For hedge cotoneaster, an average seedling yield of 30% was obtained in a North Dakota nursery (Hinds 1969). Seedlings of this species are usually ready for outplanting after 2 growing seasons.

Cotoneasters are propagated vegetatively from softwood and occasionally from hardwood cuttings (Dirr and Heuser 1987; Wyman 1986). Cuttings are taken from June to August (Dirr and Heuser 1987) and treated with 1,000 to 3,000 ppm IBA. Macdonald (1993) recommended that heel cuttings be used when evergreen species are rooted in cold frames. Cuttings, particularly those of evergreen species, root readily and are easily transplanted and overwintered. Layering and grafting are also used to obtain small numbers of plants.

Field planting. Nursery stock is generally used to establish conservation plantings. Wildland seedings of Peking cotoneaster have been only marginally successful

Table 6—*Cotoneaster,* cotoneaster: germination test conditions and results

	Germination test conditions				Percentage germination		
	Daily		Temp (°C)			Avg	
Species	light (hrs)	Medium	Day	Night	Days	(%)	Samples #
C. acutifolius	9	Wet paper	25	10	—	70–80	—
C. horizontalis	24	Wet paper	27	—	—	100	—
	24	Sand	30	20	100	30	5+
C. lucidus	9	Wet paper	25	10	—	70	—
C. niger	9	Wet paper	25	10	—	80	—

Sources: Smith (1951), Slabaugh (1954), Uhlinger (1968 & 1970).

C

(Shaw and others 2004). Germination is erratic and seedlings grow slowly, particularly if the site is not kept weed-free.

Bareroot plantings of European cotoneaster Centennial may be established using 1+0 or 2+0 bareroot seedlings with stem diameters of 0.5 to 1.3 cm ($^1/_5$ to $^1/_3$ in) just above the root collar (USDA SCS 1988). Seedlings should be planted in fallowed ground at 1.2- to 1.5-m (4- to 5-ft) spacings immediately after the soil thaws in spring. At least 5 years of weed control are often required. Average survival ranges from 70 to 95% (USDA SCS 1988). Fruit-producing stands are obtained in 3 to 4 years.

References

Cullum FG, Gordon AG. 1994. Dormancy release of tree and shrub seeds using a compost activator pretreatment. Combined Proceedings of the International Plant Propagators' Society 43: 125–130.

Cumming WA. 1960. Germination studies with *Cotoneaster lucida* being conducted at the Canada Experimental Farm, Morden, Manitoba. Western Canadian Society of Horticulture Report Proceedings 16: 43–44.

Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Everett TH, ed. 1982. The New York Botanical Garden illustrated encyclopedia of horticulture. Volume 10. New York: Garland Publishing: 893–897.

Fordham AJ. 1962. Methods of treating seeds at the Arnold Arboretum. Plant Propagators' Society Proceedings 1962: 157–163.

Griffiths M. 1994. Index of garden plants. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 1234 p.

Heriteau J. 1990. The National Arboretum book of outstanding garden plants. New York: Simon and Schuster. 292 p.

Hinds LW. 1969. Personal communication. Bismarck, ND: Lincoln-Oakes Nurseries.

Hoag DG. 1958. Hardy cotoneasters for North Dakota. Bulletin of the North Dakota Agricultural Experiment Station 20: 30–33.

Hoag DG. 1965. Trees and shrubs for the northern plains. Minneapolis: Lund Press. 376 p.

Huxley A, ed. 1994. The new Royal Horticultural Society dictionary of gardening. London: Macmillan. 1298 p.

ISTA [International Seed Testing Association]. 1993. Rules for testing seeds: rules 1993. Seed Science and Technology 21 (Suppl.): 1–259.

Johnson TK, Anderson ES. 1980. Conservation planting handbook for Wyoming and Colorado. Laramie: University of Wyoming, Agriculture Extension Service. 123 p.

Jorgensen K. 1996. Personal communication. Ephraim, UT: Utah Division of Wildlife Resources.

Krüssman G. 1986. Manual of cultivated broad-leaved trees & shrubs. Volume 3, PRU–Z. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 510 p.

Kufeld RC, Wallmo OC, Feddema C. 1973. Foods of the Rocky Mountain mule deer. Res. Pap. RM-111. Fort Collins, CO: USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station. 31 p.

Leach HR. 1956. Food habits of the Great Basin deer herds in California. California Fish and Game 42: 243–308.

Leslie WR. 1954. Propagation of cotoneaster. Western Canadian Society of Horticulture Report Proceedings 10: 88.

LHBH [Liberty Hyde Bailey Hortorium]. 1976. Hortus third. New York: Macmillan. 1290 p.

McDermand J. 1969. Personal communication. Bismarck, ND: USDA Soil Conservation Service, Bismarck Plant Materials Center.

Macdonald B. 1993. Practical woody plant propagation for nursery growers. Volume 1. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 669 p.

Meyer MM Jr. 1988. Rest and postdormancy of seeds of Cotoneaster species. HortScience 23: 1046–1047.

Miller HW, Ball CC, Knott NP. 1948. The comparative value of woody plants as food for upland game birds. Biol. Bull. 8. Olympia: Washington State Game Department and USDA Soil Conservation Service. 39 p.

Nonnecke IL. 1954. A study of climatological influence on plant growth in the Lethbridge area. Western Canadian Horticultural Society Report Proceedings 10:109–113.

Plummer AP, Christensen DR, Monsen SB. 1968. Restoring big-game range in Utah. Pub. 68-3. Salt Lake City: Utah Division of Fish and Game. 183 p.

Plummer AP, Monsen SB, Stevens R. 1977. Intermountain range plant names and symbols. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-38. Ogden, UT: USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station. 82 p.

Rehder A. 1940. Manual of cultivated trees and shrubs. 2nd ed. New York: Macmillan. 996 p.

Rosendahl CO. 1955. Trees and shrubs of the upper Midwest. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press. 411 p.

Shaw NL, Monsen SB, Stevens R. 2004. Rosaceous shrubs. In: Monsen SB, Stevens R, Shaw NL, eds. Restoring western ranges and wildlands. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM–136. Provo, UT: USDA Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station.

Slabaugh PE. 1974. *Cotoneaster* B. Ehrh., cotoneaster. In: Shopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 349–352.

Smith BC. 1951. An investigation of the rest period in the seed of the genus *Cotoneaster*. American Society of Horticulture Science Proceedings 57: 396–400.

Uhlinger RD. 1968 & 1970. Personal communication. North Platte: University of Nebraska, North Platte Experiment Station.

USDA SCS [USDA Soil Conservation Service]. 1988. 'Centennial' cotoneaster. Prog. Aid 1406. [Bismarck, ND]: USDA Soil Conservation Service, Bismarck Plant Materials Center. 6 p.

Wyman D. 1949. Shrubs and vines for American gardens. New York: Macmillan. 442 p.

Wyman D. 1986. Wyman's gardening encyclopedia. New York: Macmillan. 1221 p.

Zucker I. 1966. Flowering shrubs. Princeton, NJ: Van Nostrand. 380 p.

Rosaceae—Rose family

Crataegus L.

hawthorn, haw, thorn, thorn-apple

F. Todd Lasseigne and Frank A. Blazich

Dr. Lasseigne is executive director of the Paul J. Ciener Botanical Garden, Kernersville, North Carolina; Dr. Blazich is alumni distinguished graduate professor of plant propagation and tissue culture at North Carolina State University's Department of Horticultural Science, Raleigh, North Carolina

Growth habit, occurrence, and uses. The genus *Crataegus* L. is a complex group of trees and shrubs native to northern temperate zones (Mabberley 1997), mostly between latitudes 30° and 50°N (Phipps 1983). Although most species can attain tree-sized proportions, hawthorns in general do not form large trees or exist as canopy dominants in forests (Little 1980a&b). Some species are decidedly shrubby, whereas others can grow to heights of 12 m (table 1). There are about 250 currently recognized species, with most native to the New World (about 200 species), and the remainder (about 50 species) native to the Old World (Christensen 1992; Phipps and others 1990). Species native to the United States, as well as those that have been introduced and naturalized and some of those grown horticulturally, are included herein (table 1).

Historically, the taxonomy of the hawthorn genus has been rife with disagreement and confusion. The circumscriptions of species have varied widely, and authors of various floristic treatments have misidentified species that occur in regions treated in their works (Phipps 1998c). The genus has vexed so many authors that early experts on the group termed the situation "the Crataegus problem" (Eggleston 1910; Palmer 1932). Nearly 1,500 "species" were described in North America alone, mostly by W. W. Ashe, C. D. Beadle, and C. S. Sargent, from the 1890s through the 1910s (Christensen 1992; Phipps 1988; Phipps and others 1990; Robertson 1974). Palmer later reduced the number of species of hawthorns, such that only 20 to 100 were recognized, a range followed by subsequent authors (Phipps 1988). Recently, taxonomists have taken a middle approach, recognizing 100 to 200 species in North America (Kartesz 1994a&b; Phipps and others 1990), a larger number than that accepted in treatments of 20 to 30 years ago. Two primary references—Kartesz (1994a) and Phipps and others (1990)—offer the most complete survey of North American hawthorns (excluding Mexico).

Crataegus belongs to the subfamily Maloideae in the Rosaceae, a natural group of complex genera with the ability to interbreed freely (or hybridize), as they all possess the basal chromosome number of 17 (Phipps and others 1991; Robertson 1974; Robertson and others 1991). Authors have long regarded hybridization and apomixis as potential explanatory factors for the speciation phenomenon existing in hawthorns (Phipps 1988; Radford and others 1968; Vines 1960). Robertson (1974) related empirically derived data that implicated apomixis and hybridization as causes of the variation found within the genus. Specifically, he cited (1) widespread occurrence of pollen sterility; (2) cytological proof of triploidy or polyploidy in > 75% of plants observed; (3) similarity between offspring produced from triploid or pollen-sterile plants and parental plants; and (4) the ability of flowers that have stigmas removed at anthesis to set fruit.

Many authors allude to the existence of putative hybrids in New World hawthorns (Elias 1987; Harlow and others 1996; Jacobson 1996; Kartesz 1994a&b; Knees and Warwick 1995; LHBH 1976; Little 1980a&b; Phipps 1984; Vines 1960). However, despite widespread documentation of hybrid species complexes existing in Eurasia (Christensen 1992), few scientifically verified examples of hybrid species in North American hawthorns are known (Phipps 1998a). Several recent studies now demonstrate unequivocal proof that both apomixis and polyploidy are implicated in the complex variation seen in this genus in North America (Dickinson 1985; Muniyamma and Phipps 1979a&b, 1984, 1985; Phipps 1984). Apomixis and hybridization are also known in other Rosaceous genera, including *Alchemilla* L. (lady's-mantle), *Cotoneaster* Medik. (cotoneaster), *Potentilla* L. (cinquefoil), and *Rubus* L. (blackberries and raspberries) (Mabberley 1997).

Around the world, hawthorns are used for a wide range of purposes. Many hawthorn species are grown for their

Table 1—*Crataegus,* hawthorn: nomenclature, occurrence, and heights at maturity

Scientific name & synonym(s)	Common name(s)	Occurrence	Height at maturity (m)
***C. aestivalis* (Walt.) Torr. & Gray** *C. cerasoides* Sarg. *C. luculenta* Sarg.; *C. maloides* Sarg.	**eastern mayhaw**, shining, may, or apple hawthorn	N Florida & SE Alabama, N to E North Carolina	3–12
***C. x anomala* Sarg. (pro sp.)** *C. arnoldiana Sarg.*	**Arnold hawthorn**, anomalous hawthorn	Quebec & New England, S to New York	5–10
***C. berberifolia* Torr. & Gray**	**barberry hawthorn,** bigtree hawthorn	Virginia to Kansas, S to Georgia & Texas	5–11
***C. brachyacantha* Sarg. & Engelm.**	**blueberry hawthorn**, blue haw, pomette bleu	Arkansas to Oklahoma, S to Mississippi & Texas; Georgia also	6–15
***C. brainerdii* Sarg.**	**Brainerd hawthorn**	Quebec to Michigan, S to New England, North Carolina & Ohio	2–7
***C. calpodendron* (Ehrh.) Medik.** *C. calpodendron* var. hispidula (Sarg.) Palmer *C. fontanesiana* (Spach) Steud. *C. hispidula* Sarg.; *C. tomentosa* L.	**pear hawthorn,** sugar or black hawthorn	Ontario to Minnesota & Kansas, S to Georgia & Texas	4–6
C. chrysocarpa* Ashe var. *chrysocarpa *C. brunetiana* Sarg. *C. doddsii* Ramalay; *C. faxonii* Sarg. *C. praecoqua* Sarg.; *C. praecox* Sarg. *C. rotundifolia* Moench; *C. sheridana* A. Nelson	**fireberry hawthorn,** roundleaf or golden-fruit hawthorn	Newfoundland to British Columbia, S to North Carolina & New Mexico	5–10
***C. coccinoides* Ashe**	**Kansas hawthorn,** Eggert thorn	Indiana to Kansas, S to Arkansas & Oklahoma	4–7
***C. crus-galli* L.** *C. acutifolia* Sarg.; *C. bushii* Sarg. *C. canbyi* Sarg.; *C. cherokeensis* Sarg. *C. mohrii* Beadle; *C.operata* Ashe; C.*palmeri* Sarg. *C. regalis* Beadle; *C. sabineana* Ashe *C. salicifolia* Medik. *C. signata* Beadle *C. subpilosa* Sarg.; *C. vallicola* Sarg. *C. warneri* Sarg.	**cockspur hawthorn,** Newcastle thorn, hog-apple	Quebec to Michigan & Kansas, S to Florida & Texas	5–10
***C. dilatata* Sarg.** *C. conspecta* Sarg. *C. locuples* Sarg.	**broadleaf hawthorn,** apple-leaf hawthorn	Quebec to Michigan, S to New York, Kentucky, & Missouri	4–8
***C. douglasii* Lindl.** *C. columbiana* Howell	**black hawthorn,** Douglas or western black hawthorn, black thornberry	Alaska to S California, Ontario to Dakotas, S to Michigan & Nevada	7–12
***C. erythropoda* Ashe** *C. cerronis* A. Nelson	**cerro,** chocolate hawthorn	Wyoming to Washington, S to New Mexico & Arizona	2–6
***C. flabellata* (Spach) Kirchn.** *C. densiflora* Sarg.; *C. grayana* Egglest.	**fanleaf hawthorn**	Maine to Quebec to Michigan, S to Florida & Louisiana	4–6
***C. flava* Ait.** *C. cullasagensis* Ashe	**yellow hawthorn** summer haw	Maryland & West Virginia, S to Florida & Mississippi	5–8
***C. greggiana* Egglest.**	**Gregg hawthorn**	Texas & NE Mexico	3–6
***C. harbisonii* Beadle**	**Harbison hawthorn**	Tennessee, S to Georgia & Alabama	3–8
***C. intricata* Lange**	**thicket hawthorn,** entangled or Allegheny hawthorn	New England to Michigan to Missouri, S to Florida & Alabama	1–7
***C. lacrimata* Small**	**Pensacola hawthorn,** weeping or sandhill hawthorn	Florida	3–6
***C. laevigata* (Poir.) DC.** *C. oxyacantha* L., in part *C. oxycanthoides* Thuill.	**English hawthorn,** English midland or English woodland hawthorn	Central & W Europe	2–4
***C. marshallii* Egglest.** *C. apiifolia* (Marshs.) Michaux	**parsley hawthorn,** parsley haw	Virginia to Illinois, S to Florida & Texas	2–8
***C. mollis* (Torr. & Gray) Scheele** *C. albicans* Ashe *C. arkansana* Sarg. *C. brachyphylla* Beadle *C. cibaria* Beadle *C. coccinea* var. *mollis* Torr. & Gray *C. invisa* Sarg.; *C. lacera* Sarg.; *C. limaria* Sarg.	**downy hawthorn,** summer hawthorn red haw, turkey-apple	Ontario to the Dakotas, S to Alabama & Texas	6–12
***C. monogyna* Jac.** *C. oxyacantha* L. ssp. *monogyna* (Jacq.) Rouy & Camus	**oneseed hawthorn,** single-seed or common hawthorn, may, quickthorn	Europe, N Africa, & W Asia	5–12

Table 1—*Crataegus,* hawthorn: nomenclature, occurrence, and heights at maturity (continued)

Scientific name & synonym(s)	Common name(s)	Occurrence	Height at maturity (m)
C. nitida **(Engelm.) Sarg.** *C. viridis* var. *nitida* Engelm.	**shining hawthorn,** glossy hawthorn, & shining thorn	Ohio to Illinois, S to Arkansas	7–12
C. opaca **Hook. & Arn.** *C. nudiflora* Nutt. ex Torr. & Gray	**western mayhaw**, apple haw, may, or riverflat hawthorn	W Florida to Texas, N to Arkansas	6–10
C. pedicellata **Sarg. var. *pedicellata*** *C. aulica* Sarg.; *C. caesa* Ashe *C. coccinea* L. in part	**scarlet hawthorn,** Ontario hawthorn	Maine to Michigan, S to Virginia & Illinois; South Carolina & Florida also	4–8
C. persimilis **Sarg.** *C. laetifica* Sarg.; *C. prunifolia* Pers.	**plumleaf hawthorn**	New York to Ontario, S to Pennsylvania & Ohio	7–10
C. phaenopyrum **(L. f.) Medik.** *C. cordata* (Mill.) Ait. *C. populifolia* Walt. *C. youngii* Sarg.	**Washington hawthorn**, Virginia hawthorn, Washington thorn, hedge thorn, red haw	New Jersey to Missouri, S to Florida, Mississippi & Louisiana	4–10
C. piperi **Britt.** *C. chrysocarpa* Ashe var. *piperi* (Britt.) Krushke *C. columbiana* auct. *C. columbiana* var. *columbiana* T.J. Howell *C. columbiana* Howell var. *piperi* (Britt.) Egglest.	**Columbia hawthorn,** Piper hawthorn	British Columbia, S to Idaho & Oregon	4–6
C. pruinosa **(Wendl. f.) K. Koch** *C. formosa* Sarg. *C. georgiana* Sarg. *C. lecta* Sarg.; *C. mackenzii* Sarg. *C. leiophylla* Sarg.; *C. porteri* Britt. *C. rugosa* (Ashe) Kruschke; *C. virella* Ashe	**frosted hawthorn,** waxy-fruited hawthorn	Newfoundland to Wisconsin, S to West Virginia & Oklahoma	2–8
C. pulcherrima **Ashe** *C. flava* Ait., not auctt. *C. opima* Beadle; *C. robur* Beadle	**beautiful hawthorn**	Florida to Mississippi	4–8
C. punctata **Jacq.** *C. fastosa* Sarg. *C. punctata* var. *aurea* Ait. *C. verruculosa* Sarg.	**dotted hawthorn,** flat-topped, thicket, or large-fruited hawthorn	Quebec to Minnesota & Iowa, S to Georgia & Arkansas	5–10
C. reverchonii **Sarg.**	**Reverchon hawthorn**	Missouri to Kansas, S to Arkansas & Texas	1–8
C. rufula **Sarg.**	**rufous mayhaw**	N Florida, SW Georgia, & SE Alabama	3–9
C. saligna **Greene**	**willow hawthorn**	Colorado	4–6
C. sanguinea **Pall.**	**Siberian hawthorn**	E Russia & Siberia, S to Mongolia & China	5–8
C. spathulata **Michx.** *C. microcarpa* Lindl.	**littlehip hawthorn,** small-fruited or pasture hawthorn	Virginia to Missouri, S to Florida to Texas	5–8
C. succulenta **Schrad. ex Link** *C. florifera* Sarg.; *C. laxiflora* Sarg.	**fleshy hawthorn,** longspine or succulent hawthorn	Nova Scotia to Montana, S to North Carolina & Utah	5–8
C. tracyi **Ashe ex Egglest.** *C. montivaga* Sarg.	**Tracy hawthorn,** mountain hawthorn	Texas & NE Mexico	3–5
C. triflora **Chapman**	**three-flower hawthorn**	Tennessee, S to Georgia & Louisiana	4–6
C. uniflora **Münchh.** *C. bisculcata* Ashe; *C. choriophylla* Sarg. *C. dawsoniana* Sarg.; *C. gregalis* Beadle	**dwarf haw,** one-flowered hawthorn, & dwarf thorn	New York to Missouri, S to Florida & NE Mexico	1/2–4
C. viridis **L.** *C. amicalis* Sarg. *C. ingens* Beadle	**green hawthorn**, southern or tall hawthorn, green haw, green or southern thorn	Pennsylvania to Kansas, S to Florida & Texas	5–12

Sources: Beadle (1913), Brinkman (1974), Dirr (1998), Flint (1997), Foote and Jones (1989), Griffiths (1994), Jacobson (1996), Little (1980a&b), Palmer (1950, 1952), Phipps (1988, 1995, 1998a&b), Phipps and O'Kennon (1998), Phipps and others (1990), Sargent (1933), Strausbaugh and Core (1978), Tidestrom (1933), Vines (1960), Wasson (2001), Weakley (2002).

edible fruits in Asia, Central America, and various Mediterranean countries (Everett 1981; Guo and Jiao 1995; Mabberley 1997; Usher 1974). The fruits of some species contain higher concentrations of vitamin C than do oranges (*Citrus* L. spp.) (Morton 1981).

In recent years, cultivation of mayhaws native to the southeastern United States—including eastern, western, and rufous mayhaws—has increased (Bush and others 1991; Payne and Krewer 1990; Payne and others 1990). Mayhaws are atypical among the hawthorns in their early flowering period (from late February through mid-March) and their early fruit ripening dates (May) (table 2) (Payne and Krewer 1990). At least 12 cultivars have been selected for improved fruit size, yield, and ease of harvest, and these are grown for production of jellies, juices, preserves, and wine. Vitamin contents are comparable to those found in manzanilla (*Crataegus mexicana* Moc. & Sesse ex DC.) (Payne and others 1990), a species used for medicinal purposes in Central America (Morton 1981). However, until propagation, production, and harvest techniques are improved, limited supplies of fruits derived from orchard-grown plants will necessitate further collection of fruit from native stands (Bush and others 1991). Other North American *Crataegus* species cultivated for fruit production are black, yellow, and downy hawthorns (Mabberley 1997; Usher 1974).

Many hawthorn taxa are grown in North America and Europe solely as ornamental plants because of their small stature, brilliant flowers in spring, and brightly colored fruits in fall (Bean 1970; Christensen 1992; Dirr 1998; Everett 1981; Flint 1997; Griffiths 1994; Jacobson 1996; Knees and Warwick 1995; Krüssmann 1984; Mabberley 1997). In the United States, the most commonly encountered hawthorn taxa in cultivation include Washington,'Winter King', cockspur, plumleaf, and Lavalle hawthorns (*C.* × *lavallei* Henriq. ex Lav.) (Bir 1992; Dirr 1998; Everett 1981; Flint 1997). One caution, however, is necessary with regard to cultivated hawthorns. Because only a partial understanding of the taxonomy of native populations of hawthorns now exists, especially in North America, it is likely that identities of many cultivated hawthorns may be either incorrect or imprecisely defined.

Hawthorns are important for wildlife. They offer good nesting sites for birds because of their dense branching and their thorns, which deter predators (Martin and others 1961). Fruits of many species are consumed by songbirds, game birds, small mammals, and ungulates (Shrauder 1977). Hawthorns are recommended commonly by professionals as landscaping and shelterbelt plants that can attract wildlife (Bir 1992; Elias 1987; Foote and Jones 1989; Morgenson 1999; Petrides 1988).

Flowering and fruiting. Flowers always appear after leaf emergence and are borne either in flat-topped inflorescences termed corymbs or in globular inflorescences termed umbels (Phipps 1988). Flower color is usually white, but rarely, pink-flowered variants are found in horticultural selections. From 1 to 25 flowers can be produced per inflorescence (Christensen 1992; Phipps 1988). Flowers usually contain 5 petals and 5 to 20 stamens and have a fetid odor in many species.

Hawthorn fruits are known as pomes, although the seeds and their bony endocarps are termed pyrenes, or nutlets (figures 1 and 2). Between 1 and 5 pyrenes are produced in each pome. Although most species produce flowers in spring and fruits in fall, mayhaws are notable for their early flowering and fruit ripening period. Some species drop fruits in autumn, and others have fruits that persist through winter. Timing of these events is important to horticulturists and wildlife and game managers (table 2).

Collection of fruits, seed extraction, cleaning, and storage. Mature fruits of most hawthorn species are collected readily from the ground in autumn, whereas fruits of species that tend to hold their fruits through the winter must be hand-picked from the trees (Brinkman 1974). Harvested fruits can be macerated to separate the seeds from the fleshy pericarp (Munson 1986). The macerated pericarp material can be removed by water flotation, and the seeds should then be air-dried. Seed yield data are available for only a few species, and there is considerable variability among them (table 3).

As an alternative to macerating the fruits and subsequently storing the seeds, fermenting freshly collected, undried fruits of western mayhaw for 4 or 8 days yielded 93% germination. However, fermentation periods > 8 days adversely affected seed germination (Baker 1991). Most other reports stated that acid scarification and/or cold stratification are obligatory to enhance seed germination. Fermentation treatments may prove extremely beneficial in reducing the time required to produce seedlings of hawthorns. However, further research on a wide range of hawthorns is needed before making general conclusions about the usefulness of such treatments.

After extracting, cleaning, and drying, the seeds should be stored under refrigerated conditions (Dirr and Heuser 1987; Hartmann and others 2002). All indications are that hawthorn seeds are orthodox in storage behavior, but reports on long-term seed viability during storage do not all agree.

C

Table 2—*Crataegus,* hawthorn: phenology of flowering and fruiting, and color of ripe fruit

Species	Flowering	Fruit ripening	Color of ripe fruit*
C. aestivalis	Mar	May–June	Lustrous, scarlet
C. x anomala	May	Sept–Oct	Bright crimson
C. berberifolia	Mar–Apr	Oct	Orange with red face
C. brachyacantha	Apr–May	Aug	Bright blue with white wax
C. brainerdii	May–June	Sept–Oct	Red
C. calpodendron	May–June	Sept–Oct	Orange-red to red
C. chrysocarpa	May–June	Aug–Sept	Yellow to orange to crimson
C. coccinoides	May	Oct	Glossy, dark crimson
C. crus-galli	June	Oct	Dull red
C. dilatata	May	Sept	Scarlet with dark spots
C. douglasii	May	Aug–Sept	Lustrous, black to chestnut-brown
C. erythropoda	Apr–May	Oct	Red to wine purple, brown, or black
C. flabellata	May	Sept	Crimson
C. flava	Apr	Oct	Dark orange-brown or yellow
C. greggiana	Apr	Oct–Nov	Bright red
C. harbisonii	May	Oct	Bright red or orange-red
C. intricata	May–June	Oct	Greenish or reddish brown
C. lacrimata	Apr	Aug	Dull yellow or orange or red
C. laevigata	Apr–May	Sept–Oct	Deep red
C. marshallii	Apr–May	Oct	Bright scarlet
C. mollis	May	Aug–Sept	Scarlet with large dark dots
C. monogyna	May	Sept–Oct	Bright red
C. nitida	May	Oct	Dull red covered with white wax
C. opaca	Feb–Mar	May	Lustrous scarlet with pale dots
C. pedicellata	May	Sept	Glossy, scarlet
C. persimilis	May–June	Oct	Bright red
C. phaenopyrum	May	Sept–Oct	Lustrous scarlet
C. piperi	May–June	Aug–Sept	Salmon-orange to scarlet
C. pruinosa	May–June	Oct–Nov	Dark purple-red
C. pulcherrima	Apr–May	Sept–Oct	Red
C. punctata	May–June	Sept–Oct	Dull red or bright yellow
C. reverchonii	May	Oct	Shiny or dull red
C. rufula	Mar–Apr	June–July	Red
C. saligna	May	Oct	Red to blue-black
C. sanguinea†	May	Aug–Sept	Bright red
C. spathulata	Apr–May	Sept–Oct	Red
C. succulenta	May–June	Sept–Oct	Bright red
C. tracyi	Apr–May	Sept–Oct	Orange-red
C. triflora	May	Oct	Red, hairy
C. uniflora	Apr–May	Sept–Oct	Yellow to dull red to brown
C. viridis	Apr–May	Sept–Oct	Bright red, orange-red, yellow

Sources: Beadle (1913), Brinkman (1974), Dirr (1998), Everett (1981), Flint (1997), Foote and Jones (1989), Jacobson (1996), Little (1980a&b), Palmer (1950, 1952), Phipps (1988, 1998a), Phipps and O'Kennon (1998), Sargent (1933), Vines (1960).
* Color of ripe fruit is highly arbitrary and varies in interpretation amoung authors due to lack of standardization. Accurate determinations of fruit color cannot be ascertained from herbarium specimens.
† Plants growing in Boston, Massachusetts, not in native habitat.

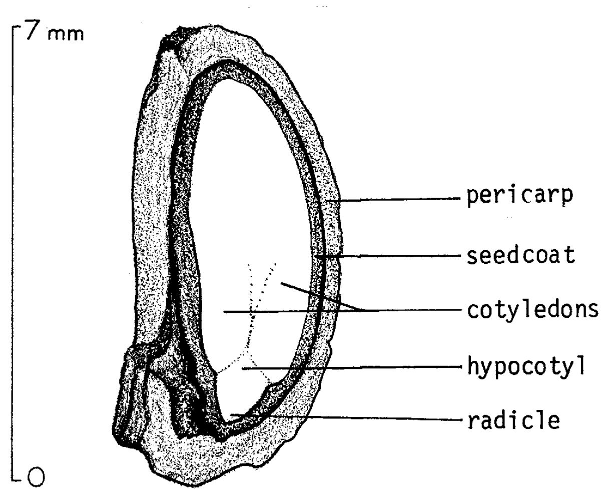
Dirr and Heuser (1987) stated that seeds of hawthorns, in general, can remain viable for 2 to 3 years in cold storage. St. John (1982), however, noted decreased seed viability in oneseed, cockspur, plumleaf, and scarlet hawthorns after storage for 2 years and recommended that seeds be stored for no more than 1 year. Bir (1992) found decreases in seed viability of Washington hawthorn after cold storage for 1 year. However, Christensen (1992) observed that under natural conditions, seeds of Eurasian species may require from 2 to 6 years to germinate.

Pregermination treatments and germination tests. Seeds of many hawthorns exhibit double dormancy (Hartmann and others 2002). Therefore, pregermination treatments usually consist of acid scarification followed by a period of cold stratification (Brinkman 1974; Hartmann and others 2002). Many authors also recommend periods of warm stratification for selected species (Brinkman 1974; Dirr and Heuser 1987; Morgenson 1999; St. John 1982; Young and Young 1992). Brinkman (1974) stated that "all" seeds of hawthorns exhibit embryo dormancy, therefore

C

Figure 1—*Crataegus*, hawthorn: cleaned pyrenes (nutlets) of *C. crus-galli*, cockspur hawthorn (**top**), *C. douglasii*, black hawthorn (**second**), *C. mollis*, downy hawthorn (**third**), *C. phaenopyrum*, Washington hawthorn (**fourth**), *C. punctata*, dotted hawthorn (**fifth**), *C. succulenta*, fleshy hawthorn (**bottom**).

Figure 2—*Crataegus*, hawthorn: longitudinal section of a pyrene (nutlet).



requiring cold stratification. This is reflected in the general recommendation by Hartmann and others (2002) that, following acid scarification, seeds should be stratified for 5 months at 4 °C. However, Kosykh (1972) reported that acid scarification and cold stratification for 6 months did not enhance germination of several species of hawthorns occurring in the Russian Crimea. In *C. mexicana*, cold stratification failed to enhance germination in seeds that were pretreated with 1 or 3 minutes of hot-water soaking at 80 °C (Felipe Isaac and others 1989). The fermentation work by Baker (1991) with western mayhaw also demonstrated high germination percentages without pretreating the seeds via acid scarification or cold stratification. Phipps (1998c) commented that hawthorns native to warm temperate climates possessed only endocarp dormancy, whereas those species native to regions with colder climates displayed embryo dormancy in addition to endocarp dormancy. In a large and geographically widely distributed group such as hawthorn, these different observations are not surprising.

Differences in endocarp thickness have been noted by several authors. Endocarp thickness in oneseed hawthorn varies not only among individual trees, but also over years (St. John 1982). Some species (for example, Washington hawthorn) lack thickened endocarps and can germinate without acid scarification (Bir 1992; Brinkman 1974; Dirr and Heuser 1987; Hartmann and others 2002). In contrast, other hawthorns exhibit highly thickened endocarps (up to 0.5 cm) and require up to 7 to 8 hours of acid scarification (Dirr and Heuser 1987) before other germination pretreatments can be imposed. Table 4 summarizes pregermination treatments that have been tested on various species of *Crataegus*.

Tipton and Pedroza (1986) studied germination requirements of Tracy hawthorn and failed to achieve germination > 54% in seeds pretreated with acid scarification for up to 4.5 hours, in combination with other pretreatments (table 4). They speculated that a combination of longer durations of acid scarification (for example, > 4.5 hours), lower germination chamber temperatures (for example, < 16 °C), shorter durations of warm stratification (for example, 0 to 60 days), and longer durations of cold stratification (for example, 100 to 322 days) might improve germination in this species. The low germination percentages observed may have been due to embryo decay caused by excessively long periods of warm stratification or high temperatures in the germination chamber, in combination with incomplete modification of the endocarp due to an inadequate duration of acid scarification. Interestingly, some seeds germinated during cold stratification before being placed into the germination chambers.

Morgenson (1999) noted differential responses of 3 hawthorns to acid scarification, as well as warm and cold stratification pretreatments. Specifically, he found that

Table 3—*Crataegus*, hawthorn: seed yield data

Species	Provenance	Seed wt/fruit wt kg/kg	Seed wt/fruit wt lb/100 lb	Average cleaned seeds/wt /kg	Average cleaned seeds/wt /lb	Samples
C. chrysocarpa	South Dakota	—	—	21,500	10,750	1
C. douglasii	Washington, Idaho, Oregon	0.15	15.2	45,200	22,600	6
C. phaenopyrum	—	—	—	59,600	29,800	1
C. punctata	Minnesota	0.11	11.3	9,400	4,700	2
C. sanguinea	Russia	0.15	15.0	—	—	—
C. succulenta	—	—	—	41,200	20,600	1

Source: Brinkman (1974).

although 2 hours of acid scarification did not enhance seed germination of Arnold and downy hawthorns, some beneficial effects on seed germination in fireberry hawthorn were noted, especially in combination with warm and cold stratification pretreatments. Germination of both Arnold and downy hawthorn seeds was optimized under a 60-day warm and 120-day (or more) cold stratification regime, with 37 and 51% germination occurring, respectively. For fireberry hawthorns, 90 to 120 days of warm stratification, followed by 120 to 180 days of cold stratification resulted in 18 to 27% germination. In all 3 species tested, extreme radicle elongation was observed in some treatments, for example, in all 120-day cold stratification combination treatments for fireberry hawthorns, and in some 60 and 120-day cold stratification combination treatments for Arnold and downy hawthorns.

In *C. azarolus* L., cold stratification treatments reduced abscisic acid (ABA) content in seeds, especially during the first 20 days, but only yielded 24% germination (Qrunfleh 1991). Work in England with oneseed, cockspur, plumleaf, and scarlet hawthorns resulted in as much as 80% germination (see table 4 for pregermination treatments) (St. John 1982). Using alternating 3-month periods of warm stratification at 21°C and cold stratification at 4 °C, seeds of oneseed hawthorn exhibited 31% germination after a warm-cold cycle and 55% after a cold-warm-cold-warm-cold cycle (Deno 1993). Utilizing these alternating cold-warm regimes with Washington hawthorn, 50% germination was attained with a warm-cold scheme, and 51% germination occurred with cold stratification only (Deno 1993). This latter result for Washington hawthorn agreed with data reported by Brinkman (1974). Studying seeds of downy hawthorn sown into old-field vegetation patches, Burton and Bazzaz (1991) noted a negative correlation between germination percentage and the quantity of plant litter on the soil surface. This suggested that seed germination in downy hawthorn may be inhibited by the presence of organic acids or allelochemicals released by decaying organic matter.

Official seed testing prescriptions are in place for only 2 species. AOSA (1993) recommends 2 hours of soaking in concentrated sulfuric acid, followed by 90 days of incubation at room temperature and then 120 days of moist-prechilling for downy hawthorn. Germination should then be tested on moist blotters or creped paper at 20/30 °C for 14 days. For oneseed hawthorn, ISTA (1993) prescribes 90 days of incubation at 25 °C, followed by 9 months of moist-prechilling at 3 to 5 °C. Germination is to be tested in sand at 20/30 °C for 28 days. Both organizations also allow tetrazolium staining to determine viability as an alternative to actual tests. For all hawthorn species, ISTA (1996) recommends cutting transversely one-third from the distal end of the seeds, then incubating for 20 to 24 hours in a 1% solution at 30 °C. The embryos must be excised for evaluation. Maximum unstained tissue is one-third the distal end and the radicle tip. Some germination test results are summarized in table 5.

Because hawthorns produce apomictic seeds, reports have appeared on clonal production of plants by seed propagation (Hartmann and others 2002). In western mayhaw, this phenomenon occurs widely because of the production of nucellar embryos and may be exploitable for production of superior clones (Payne and Krewer 1990; Payne and others 1990). Further study of apomixis in *Crataegus* is needed.

Nursery practice. Hawthorns are produced in nurseries utilizing both sexual and asexual propagation techniques. In horticulture, sexual propagation of hawthorns (via seeds) is important for production of large numbers of rootstocks, to which superior, clonal scions (often cultivars) are budded (Bush and others 1991; Dirr and Heuser 1987). In particular, this is necessary for rapid build-up of clonal orchards of desirable species of hawthorns (such as those with potential pomological interest), for which there are limited scion material and little knowledge of vegetative propagation by stem cuttings. Western mayhaw is a good example of such a species (Bush and others 1991). Brinkman (1974)

C

recommended that if controlled seed pretreatment regimes (such as stored refrigerated conditions) are not used by nurseries, seeds should be sown in early fall (versus spring) to satisfy any potential requirements for cold stratification. This may be an adequate generalization for many hawthorns, although it is important to note the aforementioned exceptions for those species (for example, those from warm temperate climates) that will germinate either in shorter time periods without the cumbersome waiting periods involved in cold stratification or through innovative seed pretreatment techniques such as fermentation.

Research on vegetative propagation of hawthorns by stem cuttings is limited. Dirr and Heuser (1987) reported previous efforts as being "rarely successful," whereas Dirr

Table 4—*Crataegus*, hawthorn: pregermination treatments

		Stratification treatments			
	Scarification*	Warm period		Cold period	
Species	(hrs)	Temp (°C)	Days	Temp (°C)	Days
C. anomala	4.5	—	—	2–9	180
	0	21–27	30–90	2–9	90–180
C. crus-galli	2–3	21–25	21	Low†	21–135
	0	21	120	7	135
C. douglasii	0.5–3	—	—	5	84–112
C. mollis	2	25	90	5	120
	0	30	21	10	180
C. monogyna	—	25	90	3–5	270
	0.5–2	20	14–28	2–4	70–84
C. pedicellata	2	20	28	2–4	84
C. persimilis	4	20	14–28	2–4	70–84
C. phaenopyrum	0	—	—	5–10	135
C. punctata	0	21	120	5	135
C. sanguinea	2	21–25	21	5	21
	0	20–25	30	4–7	—
C. succulenta	0.5	—	—	4	110–140
C. tracyi	0, 0.5, 2.5, 4.5	21–27	0, 20, 60, 120	4	0, 20, 100

Sources: Brinkman (1974), Felipe Isaac and others (1989), Qrunfleh (1991), St John (1982), Tipton and Pedroza (1986), Young and Young (1992).
* Immersion time in sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4).
† Outdoor winter temperatures.

Table 5—*Crataegus*, hawthorn: germination test conditions and results

	Germination test conditions*				Germination	
		Temp (°C)				
Species	Medium	Day	Night	Days	Avg (%)	Samples
C. anomala	Soil	8	2	180	35	1
C. crus-galli	Soil	21	21	21	73	1
C. douglasii	Peat or sand	21	21	35–45	30†	6
C. mollis	Soil	21	21	—	42–50	3
C. phaenopyrum	Soil	21	21	—	71	2
	Peat	5	5	135	92	1
C. punctata	Peat	21	21	21	60	1
C. sanguinea	Peat	21	21	21	73	1
	Peat	4	7	30	50	2
C. succulenta	Soil	—	—	—	35–40	2
C. tracyi ‡	Germination blotters	16	16	28	0	2

Sources: Brinkman (1974), Tipton and Pedroza (1986).
* Light provided ≥ 8 hours per day. For each species, seeds were pretreated as shown in table 4.
† Sound seed was approximately 45% of total seeds sown.
‡ 16/8 hour light/dark cycle used.

(1998) and Hartmann and others (2002) make no mention of stem cutting propagation. However, 35% rooting was achieved utilizing softwood stem cuttings of 2 cultivars of western mayhaw—'Super Spur' and 'T.O. Super Berry'—treated with 8,000 ppm of the potassium (K) salt of indole-butyric acid (IBA) in combination with 2,000 ppm of the K salt of naphthaleneacetic acid (NAA) (Payne and Krewer 1990). Hardwood stem cuttings of this species (no clone specified) exhibited poor rooting, with callus visible 12 weeks after sticking cuttings, and ultimately only 10% rooting occurring (Bush and others 1991). However, softwood stem cuttings taken from new growth in mid-spring (in Calhoun, Louisiana) rooted in percentages > 80% in 8 weeks under intermittent mist. No differences in rooting occurred for cuttings treated with talc formulations of 0, 3,000, or 8,000 ppm IBA (Bush and others 1991). Clearly, these latter results suggest potential for developing readily producible clonal hawthorns by stem cuttings. If so, this could reduce the importance of seed-propagated hawthorns.

Vegetative propagation of hawthorns by grafting and budding is used widely in the horticulture industry. T-budding is one of the most viable vegetative propagation procedures employed for a wide range of cultivars of hawthorns (Dirr and Heuser 1987; Hartmann and others 2002). Root-grafting is also mentioned (Hartmann and others 2002) but rarely practiced. In the United States, Washington hawthorn is the "universal" rootstock, due to the fact that (a) seedlings are commonly available (because seeds of this hawthorn species germinate more easily than those of other species) and (b) bark-slippage occurs over a long season (late summer to early fall) (Dirr and Heuser 1987). Cultivars budded onto Washington hawthorn can be expected to grow 0.9 to 1.2 m in the growing season following budding (Dirr and Heuser 1987). Cultivars of European species (for example, English and oneseed hawthorns) should be budded onto rootstocks of European species, whereas hawthorns native to North America should be budded onto rootstocks of North American species (Dirr and Heuser 1987; Hartmann and others 2002). Aside from these constraints, T-budded hawthorns appear to be highly compatible across many species.

Several grafting procedures are employed (rather than budding procedures) in production of plants of mayhaw. Cleft grafts for larger rootstocks or whip-and-tongue grafts for small diameter rootstocks are used widely in late winter (Payne and Krewer 1990). In Louisiana, cleft grafting is the most popular grafting method used for western mayhaw (Bush and others 1991). Other species, such as parsley, cockspur, Washington, and yellow hawthorns, also can be used as rootstocks for mayhaws (in particular, western mayhaw) due to graft compatibility (Payne and Krewer 1990).

Brinkman (1974) called for additional trials on hawthorns to acquire more knowledge on seed biology. However, little comprehensive research has been conducted in the intervening 30 years on this subject. Much work remains to be done before a comprehensive understanding of propagation of hawthorns will be possible.

References

AOSA [Association of Official Seed Analysts]. 1993. Rules for testing seeds. Journal of Seed Technology 16(3): 1–113.

Baker ML. 1991. Increasing seed germination percentage of *Crataegus opaca* (mayhaw) by fermentation [abstract]. HortScience 26: 496.

Beadle CD. 1913. *Crataegus* L. In: Small JK, ed. Flora of the southeastern United States: being descriptions of the seed-plants, ferns and fern-allies growing naturally in North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, ... and Texas east of the one hundredth meridian. 2nd ed. New York: J.K. Small: 532–569.

Bean WJ. 1970. Trees and shrubs hardy in the British Isles. Volume 1, A–C. 8th ed., fully revised. London: John Murray. 845 p.

Bir RE. 1992. Growing and propagating showy native woody plants. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press. 192 p.

Brinkman KA. 1974. *Crataegus* L., hawthorn. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 356–360.

Burton PJ, Bazzaz FA. 1991. Tree seedling emergence on interactive temperature and moisture gradients and in patches of old-field vegetation. American Journal of Botany 78:131–149.

Bush EW, Johnson CE, Payne JT. 1991. Commercial nursery production of *Crataegus opaca* in Louisiana. Proceedings of the Southern Nurserymen's Association Research Conference, 36th Annual Report: 113–115.

Christensen KI. 1992. Revision of *Crataegus* Sect. *Crataegus* and Nothosect. *Crataeguineae* (Rosaceae–Maloideae) in the Old World. Systematic Botany Monographs 35: 1–199.

Deno NC. 1993. Seed germination theory and practice. 2nd ed. State College, PA: Norman C. Deno. 242 p.

Dickinson TA. 1985. The biology of Canadian weeds. 68. *Crataegus crus-galli* L. *sensu lato*. Canadian Journal of Plant Science 65: 641–654.

Dirr MA. 1998. Manual of woody landscape plants: their identification, ornamental characteristics, culture, propagation and uses. 5th ed. Champaign, IL: Stipes Publishing Company. 1187 p.

Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation: from seed to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.

Eggleston WW. 1910. Sketch of the *Crataegus* problem, with special reference to work in the South. Journal of the New York Botanical Garden 11: 78–83.

Elias TS. 1987. The complete trees of North America: field guide and natural history. New York: Gramercy Publishing. 948 p.

Everett TH. 1981. The New York Botanical Garden illustrated encyclopedia of horticulture. Vol. 3. Cha–Di. New York: Garland Publishing: 705–1058.

Felipe Isaac OH, Gravina Telechea A, Borys MW. 1989. Interaction of provenance, high temperature, scarification and stratification on seed germination in *Crataegus pubescens* HBK. [in Spanish]. Revista Chapingo 13/16(62/63): 167–170.

C

Flint HL. 1997. Landscape plants for eastern North America: exclusive of Florida and the immediate Gulf Coast. 2nd ed. New York: John Wiley and Sons. 842 p.

Foote LE, Jones Jr. SB. 1989. Native shrubs and woody vines of the southeast: landscaping uses and identification. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 199 p.

Griffiths M. 1994. The new Royal Horticultural Society dictionary: index of garden plants. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 1234 p.

Guo T, Jiao P. 1995. Hawthorn (*Crataegus*) resources in China. HortScience 30: 1132–1134.

Harlow WM, Harrar ES, Hardin JW, White FM. 1996. Textbook of dendrology. 8th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill. 534 p.

Hartmann HT, Kester DE, Davies Jr. FT, Geneve RL. 2002. Hartmann and Kesters' plant propagation: principles and practices. 7th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall. 880 p.

ISTA [International Seed Testing Association]. 1993. Rules for testing seeds: rules 1993. Seed Science and Technology 21 (Suppl.): 1–259.

ISTA [International Seed Testing Association]. 1996. Rules amendments 1995. Seed Science and Technology 24 (Suppl.): 1–115.

Jacobson AL. 1996. North American landscape trees. Berkeley, CA: Ten Speed Press. 722 p.

Kartesz JT. 1994a. A synonymized checklist of the vascular flora of the United States, Canada, and Greenland. 2nd ed. Vol. 1–Checklist. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 622 p.

Kartesz JT. 1994b. A synonymized checklist of the vascular flora of the United States, Canada, and Greenland. 2nd ed. Vol. 2–Thesaurus. Portland, OR: Timber Press. 816 p.

Knees SG, Warwick MC. 1995. *Crataegus* Linnaeus. In: The European garden flora: a manual for the identification of plants cultivated in Europe, both out-of-doors and under glass. Volume 4, Dicotyledons (part 2). Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press: 439–446.

Kosykh VM. 1972. Germination of seeds of Crimean species of *Crataegus* [in Russian]. Byulleten Glavnogo Botanicheskogo Sada 84: 80–82.

Krüssmann G. 1984. Manual of cultivated broad-leaved trees and shrubs. Volume 1, A–D. Beaverton, OR: Timber Press. 448 p.

LHBH [Liberty Hyde Bailey Hortorium]. 1976. Hortus third: a concise dictionary of plants cultivated in the United States and Canada. New York: Macmillan. 1290 p.

Little Jr. EL. 1980a. The Audubon Society field guide to North American trees: eastern region. New York: Knopf. 714 p.

Little Jr. EL. 1980b. The Audubon Society field guide to North American trees: western region. New York: Knopf. 639 p.

Mabberley DJ. 1997. The plant-book: a portable dictionary of the vascular plants. 2nd ed. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press. 858 p.

Martin AC, Zim HS, Nelson AL. 1961. American wildlife and plants. New York: Dover. 500 p.

Morgenson G. 1999. Effects of cold stratification, warm-cold stratification, and acid scarification on seed germination of three *Crataegus* species. Tree Planters' Notes 49(3): 72–74.

Morton JF. 1981. Atlas of medicinal plants of Middle America: Bahamas to Yucatan. Springfield, IL: Charles C. Thomas. 1420 p.

Muniyamma M, Phipps JB. 1979a. Meiosis and polyploidy of Ontario species of *Crataegus* in relation to their systematics. Canadian Journal of Genetics and Cytology 21: 231–241.

Muniyamma M, Phipps JB. 1979b. Cytological proof of apomixis in *Crataegus*. American Journal of Botany 66: 149–155.

Muniyamma M, Phipps JB. 1984. Studies in *Crataegus*. 11. Further cytological evidence for the occurrence of apomixis in North American hawthorns. Canadian Journal of Botany 62: 2316–2324.

Muniyamma M, Phipps JB. 1985. Studies in *Crataegus*. 12. Cytological evidence for sexuality in some diploid and tetraploid species of North American hawthorns. Canadian Journal of Botany 63: 1319–1324.

Munson RH. 1986. Extracting seeds from fleshy fruits. Plant Propagator 32(2): 14–15.

Palmer EJ. 1932. The *Crataegus* problem. Journal of the Arnold Arboretum 13: 342–362.

Palmer EJ. 1950. *Crataegus* L., hawthorn, red haw, thorn, pommettes (Que.), cenellier (Que.). In: Fernald ML, ed. Gray's manual of botany: a handbook of the flowering plants and ferns of the central and northeastern United States and adjacent Canada. 8th ed. New York: American Book Co.: 767–801.

Palmer EJ. 1952. *Crataegus* L. hawthorn, haw, red haw. In: Gleason HA, ed. The new Britton and Brown illustrated flora of the northeastern United States and adjacent Canada. Volume 2, The choripetalous Dicotyledoneae, Saururaceae to Cornaceae, lizard's-tail to cotton gum. New York: New York Botanical Garden: 338–375.

Payne JA, Krewer GW. 1990. Mayhaw: a new fruit crop for the South. In: Janick J, Simon JE, eds. Advances in new crops. Proceedings, First National Symposium on New Crops: Research, Development, Economics; 1988 October 23–26; Indianapolis, IN. Portland, OR: Timber Press: 317–321.

Payne JA, Krewer GW, Fitenmiller RR. 1990. Mayhaws: trees of pomological and ornamental interest. HortScience 25: 246, 375.

Petrides GA. 1988. A field guide to eastern trees: eastern United States and Canada. Boston: Houghton Mifflin. 272 p.

Phipps JB. 1983. Biogeographic, taxonomic, and cladistic relationships between east Asiatic and North American *Crataegus*. Annals of the Missouri Botanical Garden 70: 667–700.

Phipps JB. 1984. Problems of hybridity in the cladistics of *Crataegus* (Rosaceae). In: Grant WF, ed. Plant biosystematics. Toronto: Academic Press: 417–438.

Phipps JB. 1988. *Crataegus* (Maloideae, Rosaceae) of the southeastern United States: 1. Introduction and series Aestivales. Journal of the Arnold Arboretum 69: 401–431.

Phipps JB. 1995. The identity of *Crataegus columbiana* and its relationship to *C. piperi* (Rosaceae). Taxon 44: 405–408.

Phipps JB. 1998a. Synopsis of *Crataegus* series *Apiifoliae, Cordatae, Microcarpae*, and *Brevispinae* (Rosaceae subfam. Maloideae). Annals of the Missouri Botanical Garden 85: 475–491.

Phipps JB. 1998b. Introduction to the red-fruited hawthorns (*Crataegus*, Rosaceae) of western North America. Canadian Journal of Botany 76: 1863–1899.

Phipps JB. 1998c. Personal communication.

Phipps JB, O'Kennon RJ. 1998. Three new species of *Crataegus* (Rosaceae) from western North America: *C. okennonii, C. okanagenensis*, and *C. phippsii*. Sida 18: 169–191.

Phipps JB, Robertson KR, Rohrer JR, Smith PG. 1991. Origins and evolution of subfam. Maloideae (Rosaceae). Systematic Botany 16: 303–332.

Phipps JB, Robertson KR, Smith PG, Rohrer JR. 1990. A checklist of the subfamily Maloideae (Rosaceae). Canadian Journal of Botany 68: 2209–2269.

Qrunfleh MM. 1991. Studies on the hawthorn (*Crataegus azarollus* L.): 2. Changes in abscisic acid content during cold stratification in relation to seed germination. Journal of Horticultural Science 66: 223–226.

Radford AE, Ahles HE, Bell CR. 1968. Manual of the vascular flora of the Carolinas. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press. 1183 p.

Robertson KR. 1974. The genera of Rosaceae in the southeastern United States. Journal of the Arnold Arboretum 55: 303–332, 334–401, 611–662.

Robertson KR, Phipps JB, Rohrer JR, Smith PG. 1991. A synopsis of genera in Maloideae (Rosaceae). Systematic Botany 16: 376–394.

Sargent CS. 1933. Manual of the trees of North America (exclusive of Mexico). Boston: Houghton Mifflin. 910 p.

Shrauder PA. 1977. Hawthorns/*Crataegus* spp. In: Halls LK, ed. Southern fruit-producing woody plants used by wildlife. Gen. Tech. Rep. SO-16. New Orleans: USDA Forest Service Southern Forest Experiment Station: 12–18.

St. John S. 1982. Acid treatment of seeds of *Crataegus monogyna* and other *Crataegus* species. Combined Proceedings of the International Plant Propagators' Society 32: 203–205.

Strausbaugh PD, Core EL. 1978. Flora of West Virginia. 2nd ed. Grantsville, WV: Seneca Books. 1079 p.

Tidestrom I. 1933. *Crataegus* L. In: Small JK, ed. Manual of the southeastern flora: being descriptions of the seed plants growing in Florida, Alabama, ... and Georgia. New York: J.K. Small: 637–644.

Tipton JL, Pedroza G. 1986. *Crataegus tracyi* Ashe: seed germination response to scarification and stratification treatment combinations. Plant Propagator 32(1): 3–5.

Usher G. 1974. A dictionary of plants used by man. London: Constable. 619 p.

Vines RA. 1960. Trees, shrubs, and woody vines of the southwest. Austin: University of Texas Press. 1104 p.

Wasson E. 2001. Trees and shrubs: illustrated A–Z of over 8500 plants. Willoughby, NSW, Australia: Global Book Publishing: 239–241.

Weakley AS. 2002. Flora of the Carolinas and Virginias [website available at www.bio.unc.edu/faculty/peet/lab/PEL/weakley_flora].

Young JA, Young CG. 1992. Seeds of woody plants in North America: revised and enlarged edition. Portland, OR: Dioscorides Press. 407 p.

Taxodiaceae—Redwood family

Cryptomeria japonica (L. f.) D. Don

sugi or cryptomeria

Gerald A. Walters and John K. Francis

Dr. Walters retired from the USDA Forest Service; Dr. Francis retired from the USDA Forest Service's International Institute of Tropical Forestry

Synonyms. *C. fortunei* Hooibrenk, *C. mairei* (Leveille) Nakai, *C. kawaii* Hayata, *Cupressus japonica* L. f., *Cupressus mairei* Leveille.

Other common names. Japanese cryptomeria, Japanese-cedar, goddess-of-mercy-fir, peacock-pine.

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. *Cryptomeria* is a monotypic genus native of Japan and China (Streets 1956). *Sugi—Cryptomeria japonica* [L. f.] D. Don—has been cultivated there since about 1300 A.D. for timber, shelterbelts, and environmental forestry. It was introduced to Hawaii for the same purposes about 1870 by Japanese immigrants (Carlson and Bryan 1959). An evergreen tree, it reaches heights of 36 to 46 m (Carlson and Bryan 1959; Dallimore and Jackson 1967; Troup 1921). Its wood is soft and fragrant; the red heartwood is strong and durable (Dallimore and Jackson 1967). It is used for boxes, poles, and general construction (Tsutsumi and others 1982). This species is also used for Christmas trees (Carlson and Bryan 1959; Dallimore and Jackson 1967).

Flowering and fruiting. Sugi is a monoecious species, with the male and female strobili located on different parts of the same branch. The female strobili are formed in fall and are fertilized when pollen is shed the following spring (Dallimore and Jackson 1967). Seed weight and percentage filled seeds are higher and seedling growth rate is greater when flowers are wind-pollinated (outcrossed) rather than selfed (Tabachi and Furukoshi 1983). In the native range in Japan, female cones begin to open between late January and mid-February and flower for 54 to 57 days. The male strobili begin to open about 25 days after the female strobili (Hashizume 1973). The solitary cones are globular and measure 13 to 19 mm in diameter. In Hawaii, cones ripen from July to September.

Seeds are shed during the same periods (Walters 1974). The seeds are dark brown and triangular, measuring 4 to 6 mm long and about 3 mm wide (Dallimore and Jackson 1967) (figures 1 and 2). Trees generally begin to produce seeds when 15 to 20 years old (Carlson and Bryan 1959). A 3-year-old orchard of rooted cuttings in Japan that was sprayed with gibberellic acid produced 1,082 kg/ha of seeds (967 lb/ac) 11 months later; 46% of the seeds were sound and 45% germinated (Itoo and Katsuta 1986).

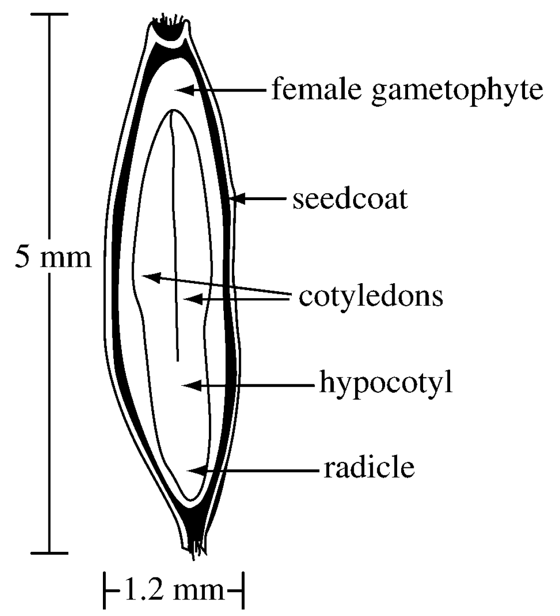
Collection, cleaning, and storage. When the cones turn from grayish brown to reddish brown, they are ripe and should be picked. Cones should be immediately spread out to finish ripening. As the cones dry, seeds fall into trays; agitation aids in seed extraction. Seeds can be separated from chaff by winnowing. The number of seeds per weight ranges from 700,000 to 1,200,000/kg (320,000 to 550,000/lb) (Walters 1974; Ohmasa 1956). The optimal moisture content for storage is 10% (Shi 1985). After drying, the seeds should be stored in sealed polyethylene bags at 2 to 5 °C (Walters 1974). A drying agent placed in the bag aids storage (Ohmasa 1956).

Germination. Sugi seed germination is considered poor to very poor (Parry 1956). In Japan, the standard of sowing—30 g/m^2 (0.1 oz/ft^2)—is based on 30% germination (Ohmasa 1956). Sugi seeds should be soaked in cold water (0 °C) for about half a day, then put moist into plastic bags, and stored at 1 °C for 60 to 90 days before sowing (Walters 1974). Bags should be left open for adequate aeration. A mild fungicide can be added (Ohmasa 1956). Constant day/night temperature, whether high or low, adversely affects germination (RFC 1973). Germination is better in

Figure 1—*Cryptomeria japonica*, sugi: seed.

C

Figure 2—*Cryptomeria japonica*, sugi: longitudinal section through a seed.



seeds kept in the light than seeds kept in the dark (Chettri and others 1987). Official test prescriptions for sugi call for germination on top of moist blotters at alternating temperatures of 20 and 30 °C for 28 days; no pretreatment is necessary (ISTA 1993).

Nursery and field practice. Sugi seeds are sown in Hawaii from November to March. Sowing is by the broadcast method or by using a planter that has been adjusted to the proper seed size. The planter places seeds in rows about 15 to 20 cm (6 to 7 in) apart. Seeds are covered with 3 to 6 mm (1 to $2^1/_2$ in) of soil (Ohmasa 1956; Walters 1974). No mulch is used in Hawaii (Walters 1974), but a single layer of straw is used in Japan (Ohmasa 1956). The seedbeds are given about 75% shade for about 2 months (Walters 1974). Seedling density in the beds is about 220 to 330 seedlings/m^2 (20 to 30/ft^2). Frost damage to seedlings in early winter can be avoided by shading or shortening the daily period of exposure to solar radiation (Horiuchi and Sakai 1978). Seedlings are outplanted as 1+0 stock in Hawaii (Walters 1974). Sugi can be started from cuttings (Carlson 1959). In an experiment in which the trees were measured after more than 26 years, there was no significant difference in any measure of growth between trees started from seeds and those started from cuttings (Yang and Wang 1984).

References

Carlson NK, Bryan LP. 1959. Hawaiian timber for the coming generations. Honolulu: Trustees of the Bernice Bishop Estate. 112 p.

Chettri R, Rai B, Basu PK. 1987. Ecological distribution of species in plant communities of the Sukhia Pokhari Forest, Darjeeling District. Environment and Ecology 5(3): 590–594.

Dallimore W, Jackson A. 1967. A handbook of Coniferae and Ginkgoaceae. 4th ed., rev. New York: St. Martin's Press. 729 p.

Hashizume H. 1973. Fundamental studies on mating in forest trees: 5. Flowering and pollination in *Cryptomeria japonica*. Bulletin of the Faculty of Agriculture, Tottori University 25: 81–96.

Horiuchi T, Sakai A. 1978. Deep supercooling may be important in frost avoidance mechanisms of 16 native species. In: Li PH, Sakai A. Plant cold hardiness and freezing stress: mechanisms and crop implications. St. Paul: University of Minnesota, Department of Horticulture and Landscape Architecture. 416 p.

ISTA [International Seed Testing Association]. 1993. International rules for seed testing. Rules 1993. Seed Science and Technology 21 (Suppl.): 1–259.

Itoo S, Katsuta M. 1986. Seed productivity in the miniature seed orchard of *Cryptomeria japonica* D. Don. Journal of the Japanese Forestry Society 68(7): 284–288.

Ohmasa M. 1956. Tree planting practices in temperate Asia: Japan. For. Dev. Pap. 10. Rome: FAO. 156 p.

Parry MS. 1956. Tree planting practices in tropical Africa. For. Dev. Pap. 8. Rome: FAO. 302 p.

RFC [Rhodesia Forestry Commission]. 1973. High temperatures inhibit the germination of conifer seed. Research Newsletter of the Rhodesia Forestry Commission 7: 5–6.

Shi ZL. 1985. A study on the critical moisture content in stored seeds of *Cunninghamia lanceolata* and other tree species. Scientia Silvae Sinicae 21(4): 241–425.

Streets RJ. 1962. Exotic trees in the British Commonwealth. Oxford, UK: Clarendon Press. 765 p.

Tabachi K, Furukoshi T. 1983. On seedling variants derived from self-pollination of seeds of sugi, *Cryptomeria japonica* D. Don. Annual Report of the Kanto Forest Tree Breeding Institute (Japan) 1980/1981 (15): 195–214.

Troup RS. 1921. The silviculture of Indian trees. Volume 3. Oxford, UK: Clarendon Press. 1195 p.

Tsutsumi J, Matsumoto T, Kitahara R, Mio S. 1982. Specific gravity, tracheid length, and microfibril angle of sugi (*Cryptomeria japonica* D. Don): seed-grown trees compared with grafts. Kyushu University Forests (Japan) 52: 115–120.

Walters GA. 1974. *Cryptomeria japonica*, cryptomeria. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 361–362.

Yang YC, Wang SY. 1984. Studies on the growth of seed plant and vegetative plant *Cryptomeria* in Taiwan. Forest Products Industries (Taiwan) 3(2): 161–169.

Cupressaceae—Cypress family

Cupressus L.

cypress

LeRoy C. Johnson and Robert P. Karrfalt

Mr. Johnson retired from the Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station; Mr. Karrfalt is director of the USDA Forest Service's National Seed Laboratory, Dry Branch, Georgia

Growth habit, occurrence, and use. The true cypresses—genus *Cupressus* L.—are evergreen trees or shrubs native to the warm temperate areas of the Northern Hemisphere. The genus comprises about 15 species distributed throughout the western United States, Mexico, northern Central America, the Mediterranean region, northern Africa, and from southern Asia to Japan (Bailey 1923; Dallimore and Jackson 1967; Little 1966, 1979; Raizada and Sahni 1960; Wolf and Wagener 1948). The species native to North America are referred to as New World cypresses and those native to Europe, Africa, and Asia, as Old World cypresses (Gauseen 1968; Wolf and Wagener 1948).

Most New World cypresses are restricted in their occurrence (table 1). McNab and Sargent cypresses are often associated with serpentine soils (Griffin and Stone 1967; Hardham 1962). Arizona cypress and its subspecies are found in large stands confined mainly to north slopes, coves, benches, and canyon bottoms (Sudworth 1915). All reach their maximum sizes in moist, sheltered canyon bottoms. Of the 10 species, subspecies, and varieties native to California, none grow in large pure stands.

In the United States, cypresses are commercially propagated mainly for landscaping, Christmas trees, erosion control, windbreaks, and to a minor extent for lumber, fenceposts, fuelwood, and railroad ties. A factor limiting the widespread planting of cypresses in some parts of the United States is the cypress canker—*Seiridium cardinale* (W. Wegener) Sutton & I. Gibson—which attacks most species of cypress (Wolf and Wagener 1948). In California, this disease has eliminated some plantations of Monterey cypress. Only resistant species or strains of cypress should be planted where the cypress canker disease exists. In the South, Arizona cypress was at one time seriously considered for Christmas tree production (Goggans and Posey 1968; Grigsby 1969; Linnartz 1964; Posey and Goggans 1967), but its susceptibility to a foliage blight caused by *Cercospora sequoiae* Ellis & Everh. (Hepting 1971) has eroded this interest.

In Africa and New Zealand, Mexican and Monterey cypresses are planted for lumber and pulp production (Bannister 1962; Bannister and Orman 1960; Paterson 1963). Mexican cypress has become commercially important in Ethiopia, Kenya, and Tanzania (Bergsten and Sundberg 1990). Himalayan cypress is planted for timber, fuelwood, windbreaks, and animal fodder in Asia (Von Carlowitz 1986).

Italian cypress is the most widely planted of all the cypresses. It has been cultivated since ancient times (Bailey 1923; Bolotin 1964a); its columnar form and dark green foliage make it a popular tree for planting in formal gardens, along roads, and in cemeteries. This variety is propagated by seeds or cuttings. Seeds collected from pure stands or isolated columnar form varieties will breed true (Bolotin 1964b). The unusually narrow crown results from the ascending branches, which almost parallel the main trunk (table 2).

Monterey cypress is also extensively used in landscaping in spite of its high susceptibility to cypress canker disease. The rapid growth, lush green foliage, and dense crown make it ideally suited for planting around buildings, in windbreaks, and along roadsides.

Flowering and fruiting. Cypresses are monoecious. Staminate and ovulate strobili are produced on the ends of short twigs or branchlets. The staminate strobili are 3 to 7 mm long, cylindrical or oblong, and light green or rarely red. They become yellow as pollen-shedding time nears. Ovulate strobili at time of pollination are less than 6 mm long, subglobose to cylindrical, erect, greenish, and have 6 to 12 (rarely 14) distichously arranged scales. At maturity they may be 15 to 25 mm long.

Pollen is shed in late fall, winter, and spring. Planted trees of Arizona and Guadeloupe cypresses growing in the Eddy Arboretum, Placerville, California, shed their pollen in

Table 1—*Cupressus,* cypress: nomenclature and occurrence

Scientific name & synonym(s)	Common names	Occurrence
***C. abramsiana* C.B. Wolf** *C. goveniana* var. *abramsiana* (C.B. Wolf) Little	**Santa Cruz cypress**	California: Santa Cruz & San Mateo Co.
***C. arizonica* Greene**	**Arizona cypress**	Small, scattered areas in mtns of Arizona, New Mexico, S Texas, & N Mexico at 915–2,450 m
***C. arizonica* ssp. *arizonica* Greene** *C. arizonica* var. *glabra* (Sudsworth) Little *C. glabra* Sudsworth	**Arizona smooth cypress**	Mtn areas of central Arizona
***C. arizonica* ssp. *nevadensis* (Abrams) E. Murray** *C. arizonica* var. *nevadensis* (Abrams) Little *C. macnabiana* var. *nevadensis* (Abrams) Abrams *C. nevadendsis* Abrams	**Piute cypress**	California: Kern Co., Piute Mtns
***C. arizonica* ssp. *stephensonii* (C.B. Wolf) Beauchamp** *C. arizonica* var. *stephensonii* (C.B. Wolf) Little *C. stephensonii* C. B. Wolf	**Cuyamaca cypress**	California: San Diego Co., Cuyamaca Mtns
***C. bakeri* Jepson** *C. bakeri* ssp. *matthewsii* C.B. Wolf	**Modoc cypress,** Baker cypress, Siskiyou cypress	California & Oregon in Siskiyou Mtns & NE California
***C. forbesii* Jepson** *C. guadalupensis* var. *forbesii* (Jepson) Little *C. quadalupensis* ssp. *forbesii* (Jepson) Beauchamp	**tecate cypress**	San Diego Co., California, & Baja California, Mexico
***C. goveniana* Gord.**	**Gowen cypress**	California coast from Mendocino Co. to San Diego Co.
***C. goveniana* ssp. *pygmaea* (Lemmon) Bartel** *C. goveniana* var. *pygmaea* Lemmon *C. pygmaea* (Lemmon) Sarg.	**Mendocino cypress,** pygmy cypress	California coast in Mendocino Co.
***C. guadalupensis* S. Wats.**	**Guadalupe cypress**	Mexico, Guadalupe Island
***C. lusitanica* Mill.**	**Mexican cypress,** cedar-of-Gog, Portuguese-cedar	Central Mexico, S to Guatemala & Costa Rica
***C. macnabiana* A. Murr**.	**MacNab cypress**	N California: Sierra Nevada foothills & interior coastal range from Siskiyou to Napa Co.
***C. macrocarpa* Hartw. ex Gord.**	**Monterey cypress**	Central California coast in Monterey Co. between Monterey & Carmel Bays; scattered on inland ridges
***C. sargentii* Jepson** stands	**Sargent cypress**	California, in the coastal range in scattered from Mendocino Co. S to Santa Barbara Co.
***C. sempervirens* L.** *C. sempervirens* var. *stricta* Aiton	**Italian cypress,** Mediterranean cypress	Mediterranean area
***C. sempervirens* var. *horizontalis* (Mill.) Gord.**	**spreading Italian cypress**	Mediterranean area
***Cupressus torulosa* D.Don** *C. torulosa* var. *corneyana* Carr.	**Himalayan cypress,** *surai*	Temperate China to tropical India & Queensland, Australia

Sources: Johnson (1974), Sargent (1965), Sudworth (1967).

October and November (Johnson 1974). Native trees of Sargent cypress at Bonnie Doon, California, pollinate in December, and Monterey cypress at Point Cypress, California, pollinate in March (Johnson 1974).

The ovulate cones and their seeds ripen the second year, some 15 to 18 months after pollination. Mature cones (figure 1) are up to 30 mm in diameter, woody or leathery, and the peltate scales usually have a central mucro. Each cone produces 12 to 150 seeds (table 3).

Precocious cone production characterizes this genus. Male cones have developed on 1- and 2-year-old seedlings of Gowen and Mendocino cypresses, respectively (McMillan 1952). Female cone production often begins on trees younger than 10 years (Magini and Tulstrup 1955; McMillan 1952), but collectable quantities are usually not produced at such an early age. Treatment of seedlings of some species with various gibberellins can stimulate precocious flowering to a great degree. Mendocino, Mexican, and

Table 2—*Cupressus*, cypress: growth habit, height, cone and seed ripeness criteria

Species	Growth habit	Height at maturity (m)	Year first cultivated	Color ripeness criteria: Cones	Seed
C. arizonica	Straight central leader	15–21	1882	Dull gray to brown, sometimes purple	Medium to dark brown or deep purplish brown
ssp. *arizonica*	Straight trunk with or without turned up side branches	8–15	ca. 1909	Glaucous bloom over rich dark brown	Medium tan to brown or red brown
ssp. *nevadensi*	Erect tree with pyramidal crown	6–15	1930	Glaucous or silver gray	Rich light tan
ssp. *stephensonii*	Erect tree with straight central leader	9–15	1900	Dull gray or brown	Very dark brown
C. bakeri	Single stem, narrow crown	9–15	1917	Grayish to dull brown	Light tan
C. forbesii	Erect, irregularly branched tree	4.5–9	1927	Dull brown or gray	Rich dark brown
C. goveniana	Shrublike to small tree with single stem	6–18	1846	Brown to gray brown	Dull dark brown to nearly black
ssp. *pygmaea*	Shrublike to medium-sized tree	9–46	—	Weathered gray	Jet black to brownish
C. guadalupensis	Broad crown, trunk forking	12–20	ca. 1879	—	Dark brown & glaucous
C. lusitanica	Erect straight trunk with drooping branches	30	ca. 1670	Dull brown	Rich light tan
C. macnabiana	Brown crown lacking main trunk	6–12	1854	Brownish gray	Medium brown to glaucous brown
C. macrocarpa	Single trunk; symmetrical in sheltered areas	8–27	1838	Brown	Dark brown
C. sargentii	Single stem, slender or bushy tree	9–23	1908	Dull brown or gray often glaucous	Dark brown
C. sempervirens	Columnar with branches parallel to main trunk	46	B.C.	Shiny brown or grayish	—
var. *horizontalis*	Single stem with spreading crown	46	B.C.	Shiny brown or grayish	—

Sources: Dallimore and Jackson (1967), Raizada and Sahni (1960), Sargent (1965), Sudworth (1915), Wolf and Wagener (1948).

Arizona cypresses produced staminate strobili on seedlings 7 to 9 months old after foliar applications of gibberellin (GA_3), whereas the latter 2 species produced ovulate strobili at ages less than 24 months (Pharis and Morf 1967). Most native and planted cypresses produce an abundance of female cones. Guadelupe cypress rarely produces female cones under cultivation (Wolf and Wagener 1948), but the close relative, tecate cypress from Baja California, does (Johnson 1974). Occasional trees appear sterile, but this phenomenon is usually correlated with extremely heavy male cone production (Johnson 1974). Most cypresses have serotinous cones. Arizona and Italian cypresses open and shed their seeds when the cones ripen (Wolf and Wagener 1948). Cones on some trees within a stand will open and shed their seeds in July (Posey and Goggans 1967).

There is little information on the cone and seed insects that damage seed production in cypress. Larvae of the cypress bark moth—*Laspeyresia cupressana* Kearfott—are known to feed on maturing seeds of Gowen and Monterey cypresses and have earned the common name of "seed-worm." Similar damage has been recorded on Monterey cypress from larvae of the moth *Henricus macrocarpan*a Walsingham (Hedlin and others 1980). Over a dozen microorganisms have been identified in association with cypress seeds (Mittal and others 1990), but their effects on seed production, if any, are not known.

Cypress seeds vary widely in shape and size (figures 2 and 3). Length with wings attached ranges from 2 to 8 mm; width dimensions are slightly less. Seeds are flattened or lense shaped, and the wings are tegumentary extensions of the seedcoat. Seed length within a cone of Sargent cypress ranged from 2 to 5 mm (Johnson 1974). X-ray examination of bulk collections of several species showed that the smallest seeds were hollow (Johnson 1974). This phenomenon is most likely caused by lack of pollination or abortion after pollination (Johnson 1974).

Seed color is an important criterion for determining ripeness and an aid in differentiating species (table 2). Some species and geographic sources within a species can be distinguished by seed color. Seeds of Mendocino cypress from the central coast of Mendocino Co., California, have shiny jet-black seedcoats; seeds of the Anchor Bay strain from southern Mendocino Co. have brownish black seedcoats. Seeds of Guadalupe and tecate cypresses have the same

C

Table 3—*Cupressus,* cypress: seed yield data

	Seeds (x1,000)/weight*						
	Range		Average				
Species	/kg	/lb	/kg	/lb	Samples	Scales/cone	Seeds/cone
C. arizonica	387.6–103.2	176.2–46.9	182.6	83.0	77+	6–8	90–120
ssp. *arizonica*	210.3–65.1	95.6–29.6	121	55.0	22+	5–10	90–100
ssp. *nevadensis*	201.1–86.7	91.4–39.4	126.5	57.5	11+	6–8	93
ssp. *stephensonii*	123.2–95.0	56.0–43.2	109.1	49.6	2	6–8	100–125
C. bakeri	387.2–316.8	176.0–144.0	359.9	163.6	4	6–8	50-85
C. forbesii	112.6–84.5	51.2–38.4	98.6	44.8	2	6–10	—
C. goveniana	313.3–253.4	142.4–115.2	283.4	128.8	2	3–5	90–110
ssp. *pygmaea*	246.4-232.3	112.0–105.6	239.4	108.8	2	8–10	130
C. guadalupensis	—	—	55.0	25.0	1	8-10	>100
C. lusitanica	—	—	261.8	119.0	1	6-10	75
C. macrocarpa	356.4–100.1	162.0–45.5	167.4	76.1	20	8–12	140
C. macnabiana	200.6–147.8	91.2–67.2	174.2	79.2	2	6–8	75–105
C. sargentii	147.8–98.6	67.2–44.8	123.2	56.0	2	6–10	100
C. sempervirens	149.6–118.8	68.0–54.0	137.9	62.7	9	8–14	64–280
C. torulosa	238-200	108–91	219	99	—	—	—

Sources: Goggans and Posey (1968), Rafn (1915), Raizada and Sahni (1960), Toumey and Stevens (1928), Von Carlowitz (1986), Wolf and Wagener (1948).
* Figures are for samples that have foreign matter (twigs, leaves, cone scales, etc.) removed but no attempt was made to separate sound from hollow and other nonviable seeds.

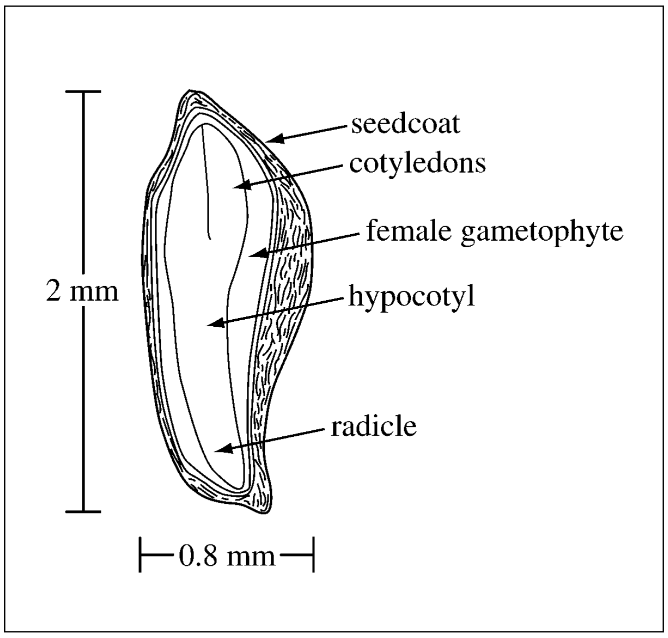
Figure 1—*Cupressus* goveniana, Gowen cypress: cones.

Figure 2—*Cupressus*, cypress: seeds of *C. arizonica*, Arizona cypress (**upper left**); *C. bakeri*; Modoc cypress (**upper center**); *C. goveniana*, Gowen cypress (**upper right**); *C. goveniana* ssp. *pygmaea*; Mendocino cypress (**middle left**); *C. forbesii*, tecate cypress (**middle center**); *C. lusitanica*, Mexican cypress (**middle right**); *C. macnabiana*, MacNab cypress (**bottom left**); *C. macrocarpa*, Monterey cypress (**bottom center**); and *C. sargentii*, Sargent cypress (**bottom right**).

color, but seeds of Guadalupe cypress have a glaucous bloom and those of tecate cypress are shiny (Wolf and Wagener 1948).

Collection of cones. Mature cones are normally collected by hand from standing trees, usually by cutting clusters of cones with hand clippers. To ensure that the seeds are mature, only seeds from cones that matured the previous season or seeds with thoroughly darkened coats from the current season should be collected (Wolf and Wagner 1948). Goggans and others (1974) confirmed this rule in collections of Arizona cypress made in Alabama plantations. Cones that had turned gray in Alabama were over 5 years old and yielded seeds of quality not much better than immature cones. It is advisable, therefore, to collect only cones 4 years old and younger. Insect-damaged cones should not be collected because they do not readily open, and many of the seeds have been destroyed by the insects (Wolf and Wagener 1948). The time of year for collecting cones for most species is not critical if older cones are collected. Seeds of Italian cypress and some Arizona cypress sspp. are

Figure 3—*Cupressus arizonica*, Arizona cypress: longitudinal section through a seed.



shed when the cones are mature, so they must be collected as soon as they ripen. Cone and seed color aid in determining when the seeds are ripe (table 2).

Extraction and storage of seed. Cypress cones must be dried for the seeds to be released. Cones dried at room temperature 22 °C require 1 to 2 months for the scales to separate and the seeds to fall out (Posey and Goggans 1967). The process of cone opening can be speeded up by boiling the cones for 30 to 60 seconds or cutting each cone in half. Either method hastens the process of cone opening by several weeks. Clusters of cones should be cut apart so the scales can freely separate.

Sun-drying is another good method, provided the weather is hot and dry. Ripe cones of Gowen and Monterey cypresses collected in July were stored in a refrigerator at 1 °C for 2 days, then placed in trays. The cones opened and shed their seeds within 2 weeks when sun-dried in day temperatures of 32 to 35 °C with relative humidity ranging from 20 to 39% (Johnson 1974). Case-hardening is a potential hazard when sun-drying. This problem is minimized or eliminated by storing the cones for several days in a refrigerator, which will act as a desiccator.

Seeds fall out readily from completely mature cones with little or no tumbling. Insect-attacked and immature cones keep their seeds tightly attached to the cone scales, but such seeds usually have low viability and are best discarded with the cones. De-winging is not necessary, as the seeds have minute or no wings.

The percentage of filled seeds varies widely among species and among individuals within a species (table 4). Values for Arizona cypress ranged from 10 to 29% filled seeds, whereas those for the subspecies Arizona smooth cypress ranged from 1 to 49% filled seeds (Goggans and Posey 1968). Major improvements in seed quality can result from careful cleaning that minimizes loss of good seeds. This may be done with either a well-controlled air separation or a specific gravity table. Bergsten and Sundberg (1990) reported an upgrading of a Mexican cypress seedlot from 20 to 60% filled seeds with incubate-dry-separate (IDS) techniques (see chapter 3).

Cypress seeds are orthodox in storage behavior and maintain viability very well at low temperatures and moisture contents. There are no long-term storage test data available, but seeds of 7 species of cypress retained good viability during 10 to 20 years storage at temperatures of 1 to 5 °C (Johnson 1974; Schubert 1954; Toumey and Stevens 1928).

Pregermination treatments. Seeds of most cypress species exhibit some dormancy, and treatments are required for prompt germination. Ceccherini and others (1998) reported that, for 14 species of cypress, 30 days of stratification at 20 °C stimulated seed germination of all except Guadalupe cypress, and that the greatest benefit was shown by Monterey and Arizona smooth cypresses. At the USDA Forest Service's Institute of Forest Genetics at Placerville, California, seeds were stratified for 30 days at 1 °C (Johnson 1974). Stratification for 60 to 90 days has been recommended for Monterey cypress (Von Carlowitz 1986). Goggans and others (1974) also found 30 days of prechilling effective in breaking dormancy of Arizona cypress. The stratification was supplemented slightly by first soaking the seeds in a 0.1% citric acid solution. When time was short, a 72-hour water soak gave some benefit over just a 24-hour water soak. Seeds are often heavily contaminated with mold and bacteria, but control of the mold is feasible with fungicides during stratification and germination. Local extension experts should be consulted for current treatment recommendations. Treated medium and seeds can then be stored in plastic bags, jars, or petri dishes for the duration of the stratification period. Seeds stratified in a petri dish can be germinated in the same dish.

Germination. Germination should be tested with seeds placed on the top of moist blotters. ISTA (1993) recommends alternating temperatures of 30 °C (day) for 8 hours and 20 °C (night) for 16 hours for Arizona and Monterey cypresses, and a constant 20 °C for Italian cypress. Test periods of 28 days are prescribed for Arizona and Italian cypresses and 35 days for Monterey cypress.

C

Table 4—*Cupressus*, cypress: germination test results on stratified seeds

		Germination		Soundness	
Species	**Days**	**Average (%)**	**Samples**	**Average (%)**	**Samples**
C. arizonica	20	26	9	30	4
ssp. *nevadensis*	6	6	1	38	1
C. bakeri	30	12	2	36	2
C. forbesii	30	12	2	54	1
C. goveniana	30	22	2	93	2
ssp. *pygmaea*	30	31	2	—	—
C. macnabiana	30	1	1	5	1
	—	—	15	2	—
C. macrocarpa	30	24	4	82	4
	30	14	37	—	—
C. sargentii	30	13	2	41	2
C. sempervirens	—	—	—	27	9

Source: Johnson (1974).
* Soundness was determined by x-radiography examination before stratification (Johnson 1974).

Because of variable dormancy, AOSA (1998) also recommends paired tests for Arizona cypress, using unstratified and stratified (21 days) samples for each lot. Official test prescriptions have not been developed for the other cypress species, but similar conditions should be sufficient. For unstratified Himalayan cypress seeds (Rao 1988), the use of the alternating germination temperatures of 21 °C daytime and 9 °C night time gave 60% germination compared to 33% germination at constant 25 °C. Although light appears to be important, prechilling and alternating temperatures are the more significant promoters of germination. Light did not appear necessary for seeds of Arizona cypress (Goggans 1974). The seeds can be watered throughout the test with a mild solution of fungicide (the same formulation used above) with no phytotoxicity. Germination test results (table 4) have been low primarily because of the low percentages of sound seed that are common among seed lots of cypress. Good estimates of germination can be made with x-ray analysis of fresh seeds of Italian, Mexican, and Arizona cypresses (Bergsten and Sundberg 1990; Chavagnat and Bastien 1991).

Nursery practice. Fall-sowing of cypress seeds has been recommended (Johnson 1974; Wolf and Wagener 1948), but spring-sowing of stratified seeds is preferred. Germination of cypress is epigeal. Seeds should be sprinkled on the nurserybed and covered with a 4 to 5 mm (0.15 to 0.20 in) layer of soil and a light mulch. A density of 320 to 640/m^2 (30 to 60/ft^2) is recommended. Zeide (1977) was successful in direct seeding Italian cypress in Israel—annual precipitation, 447 mm (18 in)—in plots that were "mulched" with light colored stones of 2 to 5 cm ($^3/_4$ to 2 in) diameters. The seedlings grew out from under the stones.

Newly germinated cypress seedlings are particularly susceptible to damping-off fungus. When possible, nursery soil should be fumigated. As an added precaution, a fungicide should be used immediately after sowing and until the seedling stems become woody, which takes about 1 month's time. Cypresses can be outplanted as 1- or 2-year-old seedlings. A well-defined taproot and numerous lateral roots are formed in the first year. One-year-old seedlings of most species have only juvenile foliage.

Some species can be propagated vegetatively. Monterey cypress cuttings treated with indole-butyric acid (IBA) root well, whereas Italian cypress cuttings root well without treatment (Dirr and Heuser 1987).

References

AOSA [Association of Official Seed Analysts]. 1998. Rules for testing seeds. Lincoln, NE: Association of Official Seed Analysts. 123 p.
Bailey LH. 1923. The cultivated evergreens. 434 p. New York: Macmillan.
Bannister MH. 1962. Prospects for selection in the cypresses. New Zealand Journal of Forestry 8: 545–559.
Bannister MH, Orman HR. 1960. *Cupressus lusitanica* as a potential timber tree for New Zealand. New Zealand Journal Forestry 8: 203–217.
Bergsten U, Sundberg M. 1990. IDS-sedimentation of *Cupressus lusitanica* seeds. In: Turnbull JW, ed. Tropical tree seed research: Proceedings, International Workshop; 1989 August 21–24; Gympie, Queensland, Australia. Canberra: Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research: 99–102.
Bolotin M. 1964a. Contributions to the arboreal flora of Israel: *Cupressus sempervirens* L. La-Yaaran 14(4): 1–7.
Bolotin M. 1964b. Segregation in progenies of *Cupressus sempervirens* L. La-Yaaran 14(2): 46–48.
Ceccherini L, Raddi S, Andreoli C. 1998. The effect of seed stratification on germination of 14 *Cupressus* species. Seed Science and Technology 26: 159–168.
Chavagnat A, Bastien JC. 1991. Determination de la qualite des graines de *Cupressus sempervirens* L. et *Cupressus arizonica* E. Greene par la radiographie aux rayons X. Seed Science and Technology 19: 139–146.
Dallimore W, Jackson AB. 1967. A handbook of Coniferae and Ginkgoaceae. 4th ed., rev. by Harrison SG. New York: St. Martin's Press. 729 p.
Dirr MA, Heuser CW Jr. 1987. The reference manual of woody plant propagation: from seeds to tissue culture. Athens, GA: Varsity Press. 239 p.
Gaussen H. 1968. Extant and fossil gymnosperms. Fasc. X. The Cupressaceae [in French]. Travaux du Laboratoire Forestiere de Toulouse Tome II, Sec. 1, Vol. 1, Part 2, 326 p.
Goggans J F, Posey CE. 1968. Variation in seeds and ovulate cones of some species and varieties of *Cupressus*. Circ. 160. Auburn University, AL: Auburn University Agricultural Experiment Station. 23 p.
Goggans JF, Jones L, Lynch KD. 1974. Germination rate of Arizona cypress improved by better cone collection techniques and seed germination treatments. Tree Planters' Notes 25(1): 3–4.
Griffin JR, Stone CO. 1967. MacNab cypress in northern California: a geographic review. Madroño 19: 19–27.
Grigsby HC. 1969. Exotic trees unsatisfactory for forestry in southern Arkansas and northern Louisiana. Res. Note SO-92. New Orleans: USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station. 5 p.
Hardham CB. 1962. The Santa Lucia *Cupressus sargentii* groves and their associated northern hydrophilous and endemic species. Madroño 16: 173–179.
Hedlin AF, Yates HO III, Tovar DC, Ebel BH, Koerber TW, Merkel EP. 1980. Cone and seed insects of North American conifers. Ottawa: Canadian Forestry Service; Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service; and Mexico City: Secretaria de Agricultura y Recursos Hidraulicos, Mexico. 122 p.
Hepting GH. 1971. Diseases of forest and shade trees of the United States. Agric. Handbk. 386. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service. 658 p.
ISTA [International Seed Testing Association]. 1993. Rules for testing seeds: rules 1993. Seed Science and Technology 21 (Suppl.): 1–259.
Johnson LC. 1974. *Cupressus*, cypress. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 363–369.
Linnartz NE. 1964. Arizona cypress for Christmas tree production in Louisiana. For. Note 56. Baton Rouge: Louisiana State University. 4 p.
Little EL Jr. 1966. Varietal transfers in *Cupressus* and *Chamaecyparis*. Madroño 18: 161–192.
Little EL Jr. 1979. Checklist of United States trees (native and naturalized). Agric. Handbk. 541. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service. 375 p.
McMillan C. 1952. An experimental inquiry into the edaphic restrictions of certain members of the California flora [thesis]. Berkkeley: University of California.
Magini E, Tulstrup NP. 1955. Tree seed notes. For. Dev. Pap. 5. Rome: FAO. 354 p.
Mittal RK, Anderson RL, Mathur SB. 1990. Microorganisms associated with tree seeds: world checklist 1990. Info. Rep. PI-X-96E/F. Ottawa: Canadian Forestry Service, Petawawa National Forestry Institute. 57 p.
Paterson DN. 1963. The production of sawn timber from small cypress thinnings in Kenya. Commonwealth Forestry Review 42: 211-216.
Pharis RP, Morf W. 1967. Experiments on the precocious flowering of western red cedar and four species of *Cupressus* with gibberellins A_3 and A_4/A_7 mixture. Canadian Journal of Botany 45: 1519–1524.
Posey CE, Goggans JF. 1967. Observations on species of cypress indigenous to the United States. Circ. 153. Auburn University, AL: Auburn University Agricultural Experiment Station. 19 p.
Rafn J. 1915. The testing of forest seeds during 25 years, 1887–1912. Copenhagen: Langkjaers Bogtrykkeri. 91 p.
Raizada MB, Sahni KC. 1960. Living Indian gymnosperms: 1. Cycadales, Ginkgoales and Coniferales. Indian Forest Research 5(2): 1–150.
Rao PB. 1988. Effects of environmental factors on germination and seedling growth in *Quercus floribunda* and *Cupressus torulosa*, tree species of central Himalaya. Annals of Botany 61: 531–540.
Sargent CS. 1965. Manual of the trees of North America (exclusive of Mexico). 2nd corrected ed. New York: Dover. 910 p.
Schubert GH. 1954. Viability of various coniferous seeds after cold storage. Journal of Forestry 52: 446–447.
Shehaghilo IM. 1987. Some studies on the collection and extraction of *Cupressus lusitanica* seed at Lushoto, Tanzania. In: Kamra SK, Ayling RD, compl. & eds. Proceedings, International Symposium of Forest Seed Problems in Africa; 1987 August 23–September 2; Harare, Zimbabwe. Umea: Swedish University of Agricultural Science: 280–286.
Sudworth GB. 1915. The cypress and juniper trees of the Rocky Mountain region. Tech. Bull. 20. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture. 36 p.
Sudworth GB. 1967. Forest trees of the Pacific slope, with new foreword and changes in nomenclature. New York: Dover. 455 p.
Toumey JW, Stevens CL. 1928. The testing of coniferous tree seeds at the School of Forestry, Yale University, 1906–1926. Bull. 21. New Haven, CT: Yale University School of Forestry. 46 p.
Von Carlowitz PG. 1986. Multipurpose tree & shrub seed directory. Nairobi: International Council for Research in Agroforestry. 265 p.
Wolf CB, Wagener WW. 1948. The New World cypresses. Volume 1. El Aliso, CA: Rancho Santa Ana Botanic Garden. 444 p.
Zeide B. 1977. Germination of cypress seeds in the field. Forest Ecology and Management 1: 141–147.

C

Fabaceae—Pea family

Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link

Scotch broom

Susan E. Meyer

Dr. Meyer is a research ecologist at the USDA Forest Service's Rocky Mountain Research Station, Shrub Sciences Laboratory, Provo, Utah

Growth habit, occurrence, and uses. The genus *Cytisus* comprises about 80 species native to Eurasia and North Africa. Many are cultivated as ornamentals, and several of these have become more or less naturalized in the United States, especially in California (Munz and Keck 1959). Scotch broom—*C. scoparius* (L.) Link—was planted extensively for erosion control during the first half of the century (Gill and Pogge 1974) but is now considered a serious invasive weed throughout the range of its introduction in North America, Australia, and New Zealand (Bossard 1991). It has become the dominant species on several hundred thousand hectares of coastal and cis-montane vegetation, from Santa Barbara, California, north to British Columbia. It is a drought-deciduous shrub with angled, photosynthetic stems that is able to root-sprout following fire (Bossard and Rejmanek 1994; Gonzales-Andres and Ortiz 1997). It is largely useless as a browse-plant because of its toxic foliage, a feature that may permit it to increase at the expense of more palatable species (Bossard and Rejmanek 1994; Gill and Pogge 1974). It increases in response to disturbance of native vegetation and is also a serious weed problem in pine plantations in California and New Zealand.

However, because of its beauty and exceptional summer drought-hardiness, Scotch broom is considered valuable as an ornamental shrub for low-maintenance landscapes. The species is very showy in flower and its evergreen stems add interest to winter landscapes. There are over 60 named varieties (Wyman 1986).

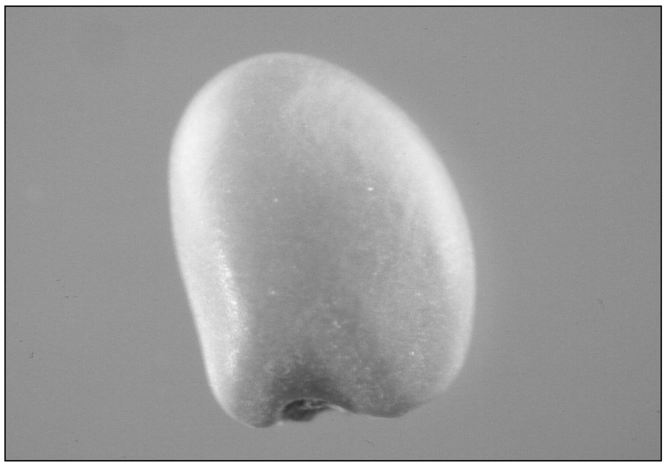
Flowering and fruiting. The perfect flowers are of typical pea-family form and appear on the plants in great profusion in May and June. Each flower must be "tripped" by an appropriate pollinator for fertilization to take place, so the mutualistic relationship with honey bees (*Apis mellifer*a L.) and native bumble bees is essentially obligatory (Parker 1997). Other native North American insects seem to ignore its fragrant blossoms, preferring to work the flowers of indigenous species. The result is that seed production may be severely pollinator-limited (Parker 1997). In spite of this, the plants may produce a prodigious number of seeds; the estimated mean annual production per plant was about 10,000 seeds in 2 California populations (Bossard and Rejmanek 1994). Host-specific pre-dispersal seed predators from Europe (a seed weevil and a bruchid beetle) have been introduced for biocontrol of Scotch broom in the Northwest, but so far these introductions have been largely ineffective, possibly because of asynchrony in the phenology of host and seed predator (Bravo 1980).

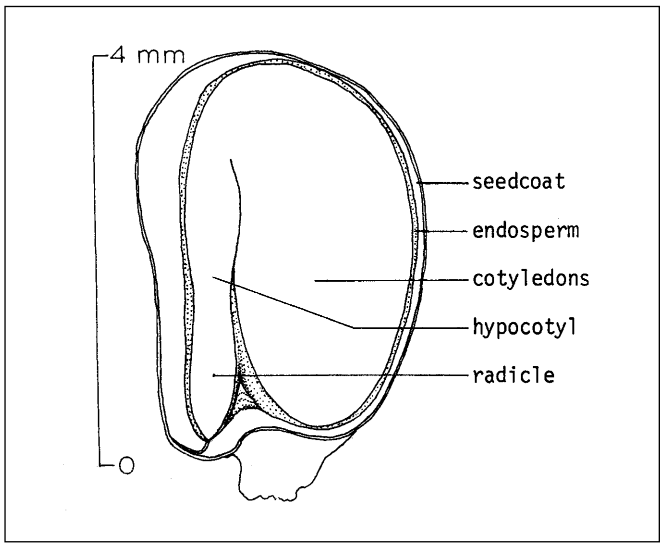
Plants reach reproductive maturity at about 4 years of age (Gill and Pogge 1974). The 5- or 6-seeded legumes (pods) ripen in August, and seeds are dispersed in September. The legumes open abruptly with a springing motion, vaulting the seeds some distance from the plant (Bossard 1991; Bossard and Rejmanek 1994). The seeds possess a strophiole or elaiosome at the hilar end (figure 1) and are secondarily dispersed by ants (Bossard 1991; Weiss 1909). At 2 California study sites, seeds were taken by mice and by ground-feeding birds, but these organisms were strictly seed predators and did not function as dispersers (Bossard 1991).

Seeds of Scotch broom have the capacity to form a persistent seed bank. Bossard (1993) found in seed retrieval experiments that 65% germinated the first year after dispersal, 20% germinated the second year, and 10% germinated the third year. About 5% of the seed population carried over for more than 3 years.

Seed collection, cleaning, and storage. After the fruits ripen but before they disperse, the legumes may be hand-stripped or picked up from beneath plants. They should be spread to dry, threshed, and screened to separate the seeds (Gill and Pogge 1974). Reported seed weights have averaged 125 seeds/g (57,500/lb) in 9 samples, and viability averaged 80% in 5 samples (Gill and Pogge 1974).

Figure 1—*Cytisus scoparius*, Scotch broom: longitudinal section through a seed (**bottom**) and exterior view (**top**).





No long-term storage data are available, but the seeds are orthodox and remain viable for many years in storage.

Germination and seed testing. Scotch broom seeds have water-impermeable (hard) seedcoats and require pretreatment in order to germinate. Once the seedcoats have been made permeable, the seeds germinate well over a wide range of temperatures and do not require any further pretreatment (Bossard 1993). Mechanical and acid scarification have been used to remove hard-seededness in this species, and the official seed-testing rules call for cutting or nicking the seedcoat at the cotyledon end, then soaking in water for 3 hours (ISTA 1993). Tests should be carried out on the tops of moist paper blotters for 28 days at 20/30 °C. More recently, the effect of heat on hard-seededness in Scotch broom has received attention. Tarrega and others (1992) report that dry-heating the seeds was as effective as mechanical scarification in terms of final percentage. Optimum time of heating varied with temperature from 1 minute at 130 °C to 15 minutes at 70 °C. Abdullah and others (1989) reported that repeated brief (3-second) immersion in boiling water resulted in complete elimination of hard-seededness, but low germination percentages indicated that some damage was occurring. They found that alternating the boiling water treatments with freezing treatments (immersion in liquid nitrogen for 15 seconds) resulted in the highest germination percentages as well as in complete removal of hard-seededness. This result was confirmed by Bossard (1993), who found that vigor of seedlings from hot/cold–treated seeds was much higher than that of seedlings from seeds subjected to dry heat only.

Nursery practice. Scotch broom is normally propagated from cuttings for ornamental planting in order to preserve varietal characters (Wyman 1986). If seed propagation is desired, seeds should be pretreated to remove hard-seededness prior to planting (Gill and Pogge 1974). The roots are delicate, and plants are more easily produced in container culture than as bareroot stock (Wyman 1986).

References

Abdullah MM, Jones RA, El-Beltagy AS. 1989. A method to overcome dormancy in Scotch broom (*Cytisus scoparius*). Environmental and Experimental Botany 29: 499–505.

Bossard CC. 1991. The role of habitat disturbance, seed predation, and ant disperal on the establishment of the exotic shrub *Cytisus scoparius*. American Midland Naturalist 126: 1–13.

Bossard CC. 1993. Seed germination in the exotic shrub *Cytisus scoparius* (Scotch broom) in California. Madroño 40: 47–61.

Bossard CC, Rejmanek M. 1994. Herbivory, growth, seed production, and resprouting of an exotic invasive shrub *Cytisus scoparius*. Biological Conservation 67: 193–200.

Bravo L. 1980. We are losing the war against broom. Fremontia 15: 27–29.

Gill JD, Pogge FL. 1974. *Cytisus scoparius* (L.) Lk., Scotch broom. In: Schopmeyer CS, tech. coord. Seeds of woody plants in the United States. Agric. Handbk. 450. Washington, DC: USDA Forest Service: 370–371.

Gonzales-Andres F, Ortiz M. 1997. Phenology of species belonging to the genus *Cytisus* and allies (Genisteae: Leguminosae). Israel Journal of Plant Science 45: 59–69.

ISTA [International Seed Testing Association]. 1993. Rules for testing seeds: rules 1993. Seed Science and Technology 21 (Suppl.): 1–259.

Munz PA, Keck DD. 1959. A California flora. Berkeley: University of California Press. 1681 p.

Parker IB. 1997. Pollinator limitation of *Cytisus scoparius* (Scotch broom), an invasive exotic shrub. Ecology 78: 1457–1470.

Tarrega R, Calvo L, Trabaud L. 1992. Effect of high temperature on seed germination of two woody Leguminosae. Vegetatio 102: 139–147.

Weiss FE. 1909. The dispersal of the seeds of the gorse and the broom by ants. New Phytologist 8: 81–90.

Wyman D. 1986. Wyman's gardening encyclopedia. Expanded 2nd ed. New York: Macmillan. 1221 p